# Acta Universitatis Sapientiae

# Mathematica

Volume 9, Number 2, 2017

Sapientia Hungarian University of Transylvania Scientia Publishing House

# Contents

M. Crasmareanu Para-mixed linear spaces
O. Engel, A. R. S. Juma The sharp version of a strongly starlikeness condition283
P. A. Kupán, Gy. Márton, R. Szász A result regarding monotonicity of the Gamma function291
J. P. Mavoungou Extensional quotient coalgebras
H. R. Moradi, M. E. Omidvar, S. S. Dragomir, M. S. Khan Sesquilinear version of numerical range and numerical radius324
L. Németh Fibonacci words in hyperbolic Pascal triangles
F. Qi, BN. Guo An explicit formula for derivative polynomials of the tangent function
Á. Száz         A natural Galois connection between generalized norms and metrics         360
E. Székely Does another Euclidean plane exist other than the parasphere?374
H. P. Waghamore, V. Husna Uniqueness of polynomial and differential monomial
Contents of volume 9, 2017

DOI: 10.1515/ausm-2017-0020

### Para-mixed linear spaces

Mircea Crasmareanu

Faculty of Mathematics University "Al. I. Cuza", Iaşi, România http://www.math.uaic.ro/~mcrasm email: mcrasm@uaic.ro

**Abstract.** We consider the paracomplex version of the notion of mixed linear spaces introduced by M. Jurchescu in [4] by replacing the complex unit i with the paracomplex unit j,  $j^2 = 1$ . The linear algebra of these spaces is studied with a special view towards their morphisms.

### Introduction

DE GRUYTER OPEN

It is well-known that up to isomorphisms there are three 2-dimensional real algebras:  $\mathbb{C} = \mathbb{R}[X]/(x^2 + 1)$ ,  $\mathbb{A} = \mathbb{R}[X]/(x^2 - 1)$ ,  $\mathbb{D} = \mathbb{R}[X]/(x^2)$ . The theory of the first algebra is richer than the other two, a fact corresponding to the field property of  $\mathbb{C}$ . Similar to the complex case, the paracomplex algebra  $\mathbb{A}$  has the basis  $\{1, j\}$  with  $j^2 = 1$ ; therefore the elements of  $\mathbb{A}$  are z = x + jy with x and y real numbers. For historical details about the paracomplex algebra please see the survey [3].

Similar to the linear complex geometry there exists a paracomplex version as follows: let V be a real linear space. A paracomplex structure on V is an involution  $J: V \to V$ ,  $J^2 = 1_V$ , such that the eigenspaces  $V_{\pm} := \ker(1_V \pm J)$ have the same dimension. The pair (V, J) is then called a paracomplex linear space. If the hypothesis regarding the eigenspaces is dropped then we obtain the notion of almost paracomplex structure. An A-linear map between the (almost) paracomplex linear spaces (V, J) and (V', J') is a linear map  $T: V \to V'$ 

<sup>2010</sup> Mathematics Subject Classification: 15A03, 15A04

Key words and phrases: paracomplex structure, para-mixed linear space, morphism

satisfying  $T \circ J = J' \circ T$ . Just like complex vector spaces are vector spaces over the field  $\mathbb{C}$ , the almost paracomplex linear spaces are free modules over  $\mathbb{A}$ .

In a series of papers ([4]-[6]) M. Jurchescu defined and uses the notions of *mixed linear space* and *mixed manifold* having as (local) model the direct product  $\mathbb{R}^m \times \mathbb{C}^n$ . The mixed manifolds as differentiable families of complex spaces are useful at the cross-road of complex analysis and complex geometry, for example regarding the smoothly parameterized Čech cohomology of complex manifolds, [1]. Here, following his ideas and restricted at the linear level we define the concept of *para-mixed linear space* by replacing  $\mathbb{C}$  with A. A lot of properties of algebraic nature are similar to these frameworks and we hope to use further the notions considered now.

The paper is structured in two sections. The first one is devoted to the general theory of para-mixed linear spaces including the adapted linear maps between them and also their subspaces. A special attention is dedicated to the finite-dimensional case. The second section treats special morphisms between para-mixed linear spaces and the notion of *paracomplexification* of such spaces.

#### 1 Para-mixed linear spaces and subspaces

**Definition 1** A (almost) para-mixed linear space is a triple  $(E, E_p, P)$  where E is a real linear space and  $E_p$  is a linear subspace of E endowed with an (almost) paracomplex structure P. Then  $E_p$  is called the paracomplex part of E while the quotient real linear space  $E_r = E/E_p$  is the real part of E. The para-mixed space is pure real if  $E_p = 0$  (i.e.  $E_r = E$ ) and pure paracomplex if  $E_r = 0$  (i.e.  $E_p = E$ ). In the following we place always in the "almost" case and for simplicity we will drop this epithet.

**Example 1** i) The fundamental example is  $E = E_f = \mathbb{R}^m \times \mathbb{A}^n$  with  $E_p = \mathbb{A}^n$ and  $E_r = \mathbb{R}^m$ . Hence, a para-mixed linear space can be thought as a (trivial) vector bundle over  $E_r$  with paracomplex fibres  $E_p$ ; also, para-mixed linear spaces can be though as linear families of paracomplex spaces. Let us point out that vertical bundles endowed with paracomplex structures are recently studied in [2] and the geometry of polynomial sub-endomorphisms on a pair of distributions for a given manifold are studied in [7].

ii) The paracomplex linear spaces will be considered as pure paracomplex para-mixed linear spaces while the real linear spaces will be considered as pure real para-mixed linear spaces. A para-mixed linear space E is simultaneous pure real and pure paracomplex if and only if  $E = \{0\}$ .

**Definition 2** A linear map  $T \in L_{\mathbb{R}}(E,F) := L(E,F)$  between two para-mixed linear spaces is called a morphism if  $T(E_p) \subseteq F_p$  and the induced map  $T_p =$  $T|_{E_p} : E_p \to F_p$  is an A-linear map. T is called an antimorphism if  $T(E_p) \subseteq F_p$ and  $T_p$  is an A-antilinear map: T(x + jy) = Tx - jTy.  $T_p$  is the paracomplex part of T while  $T_r = T|_{E_r} : E_r \to F_r$  is the real part of T. Denotes by Hom(E, F) the set of all morphisms from E to F and  $T \in Hom(E, F)$  is called isomorphism if both  $T_p$  and  $T_r$  are bijective maps.

**Remark 1** i) If E is a pure real para-mixed linear space and  $T \in L(E, F)$  then T is both morphism and antimorphism. If F is a pure real para-mixed linear space and  $T \in L(E, F)$  then T is a morphism if and only if  $T_p = 0$ . If E is a general para-mixed linear space then  $(1_{E_r}, P) \in Hom(E, E)$  by considering the decomposition  $E = E_r \otimes E_p$  (see also the Corollary 1 below).

ii) The class of para-mixed linear spaces with their morphisms defines a category which contains the category of real linear spaces as well as the category of paracomplex linear spaces. The consideration of the paracomplex part (for spaces and morphisms) is a functor from the category of para-mixed linear spaces to the category of paracomplex linear spaces and similar for the consideration of the real part (for spaces and morphisms).

iii) Fix E and F two para-mixed linear spaces and  $T_1, T_2 \in L(E, F)$  two (anti)morphisms. Consider also two real numbers  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ . It follows that  $\alpha T_1 + \beta T_2$  is also an (anti)morphism with  $(\alpha T_1 + \beta T_2)_i = (\alpha T_1)_i + (\beta T_2)_i$  for  $i \in \{p, r\}$ .

iv) The linear map  $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \to z = x + jy \in \mathbb{A}$  is a bijective morphism which is not an isomorphism.

v) Hom(E, F) is a para-mixed linear space with the paracomplex part  $\text{Hom}(E, F)_p = \{T \in \text{Hom}(E, F); T_r = 0\}$  and real part  $\text{Hom}(E, F)_r = \text{Hom}(E, F_r)$   $\simeq \text{Hom}(E_r, F_r)$ . The corresponding paracomplex structure is the map  $T \in \text{Hom}(E, F) \rightarrow T \circ (1_{E_r}, P) \in \text{Hom}(E, F)$ .

vi) Fix  $T \in Hom(E, F)$  and let H be another para-mixed linear space. Let  $T_* : Hom(H, E) \rightarrow Hom(H, F)$  be the composition with T at left and  $T^* : Hom(F, H) \rightarrow Hom(E, H)$  be the composition with T at right. Then  $T_*$  and  $T^*$  are morphisms with respect to the para-mixed structure from v).

A first structural result is provided by:

**Proposition 1** In the category of para-mixed linear spaces a given para-mixed linear space E is isomorphic with the direct product  $E_r \times E_p$ .

**Proof.** We have the canonical maps:  $i: E_p \to E$  and  $\pi: E \to E_r$ . There exists the maps  $q: E \to E_p$  and  $\rho: E_r \to E$  such that:  $q \circ i = 1_{E_p}$ ,  $i \circ q + \rho \circ \pi = 1_E$ . It

follows that these maps  $i, \pi, q, \rho$  are morphisms of para-mixed linear spaces and  $(\rho, i) : E_r \times E_p \to E$  is an isomorphism.

It follows directly:

**Corollary 1** Let  $E = E_r \times E_p$  and  $F = F_r \times F_p$  be para-mixed linear spaces and  $T \in L(E, F)$ . Then  $T \in Hom(E, F)$  if and only if it has the expression:

$$\mathsf{T} = \left(\begin{array}{cc} \mathsf{T}_2 & \mathsf{0} \\ \alpha & \mathsf{T}_1 \end{array}\right) \tag{1}$$

where  $T_1 : E_p \to F_p$  is a  $\mathbb{A}$ -linear map while  $T_2 : E_r \to F_r$  and  $\alpha : E_r \to F_p$  are real linear maps. In this decomposition,  $T_1$  is the paracomplex part of T and  $T_2$  is the real part of T.

A characterization of isomorphisms is provided by:

**Proposition 2** Let E, F and T as above. Then the following statements are equivalent:

i) T is an isomorphism,

ii) T,  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  are all bijective,

iii) two of the maps T,  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  are bijective.

A special study can be performed in finite-dimension:

**Definition 3** Let E be a para-mixed linear space and  $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$ . We say that E is of (m, n)-type if  $E_r$  is a real linear space of dimension m and  $E_p$  is a paracomplex space of dimension n. A frame on E is a set of vectors  $B = \{e_1, ..., e_m, e_{m+1}, ..., e_{m+n}\}$  with  $\{e_{m+1}, ..., e_{m+n}\}$  a basis in  $E_p$  and  $\{[e_1], ..., [e_m]\}$  a basis in  $E_r$  where [e] is the class of  $e \in E$  considered in  $E_r$ .

A characterization of this notion is:

**Proposition 3** Fix E a para-mixed linear space of (m, n)-type and  $B = \{e_1, ..., e_{m+n}\} \subset E$  with  $\{e_{m+1}, ..., e_{m+n}\} \subset E_p$ . Then B is a frame on E if and only if the map:

$$\mathsf{T}: (x^1, ..., x^{m+n}) \in \mathsf{E}_\mathsf{f} = \mathbb{R}^m \times \mathbb{A}^n \to x = x^i e_i \in \mathsf{E}$$
(2)

belongs to  $Hom(E_f, E)$ .

**Definition 4** Let E be para-mixed linear space and W a subspace of E. Then W is called para-mixed subspace of E if  $W \cap E_p$  is a paracomplex subspace of  $E_p$  which means that  $x \in W \cap E_p$  implies  $jx \in E_p$ . A para-mixed subspace W will be considered itself as a para-mixed linear space with  $W_p = W \cap E$ . Hence, the inclusion map  $i: W \to E$  is a morphism with  $i_p$  and  $i_r$  injective maps.

**Example 2** i) For  $T \in Hom(E, F)$  the kernel ker  $T = T^{-1}(O_F)$  is a para-mixed subspace of E.

ii) The intersection of an arbitrary family of para-mixed subspaces is again a para-mixed subspace.

iii) Let E be a pure real para-mixed linear space and  $W \subset E$  a (real) subspace. Then W is a para-mixed subspace. A similar property holds for the paracomplex case.

#### 2 Monomorphisms and epimorphisms

#### **Definition 5** *Let* $T \in Hom(E, F)$ *.*

i) T is called monomorphism if there exists a para-mixed linear space G and  $R \in Hom(G, F)$  such that the map  $(T, R) : E \times G \rightarrow F$  is an isomorphism.

ii) T is called epimorphism if there exists a para-mixed linear space G and  $R \in Hom(E, G)$  such that the map  $(R, T) : E \to F \times G$  is an isomorphism.

A characterization of these types of morphisms is given by:

#### **Proposition 4** Let $T \in Hom(E, F)$ be given.

- I) The following statements are equivalent:
  - a) T is a monomorphism,
  - b) T and  $T_r$  are injective maps,
  - c)  $T_p$  and  $T_r$  are injective maps,
  - d) T have an inverse morphism at left.
- II) Also, the following statements are equivalent:
  - e) T is an epimorphism,
  - f) T and T<sub>p</sub> are surjective maps,
  - g)  $T_p$  and  $T_r$  are surjective maps,
  - h) T have an inverse morphism at right.

**Proof.** a) $\Rightarrow$ b). From hypothesis the maps (T, R) and  $(T, R)_r : E_r \times G_r \to F_r$  is bijective and then T,  $T_r$  are injective. b) $\Rightarrow$ c). It is obvious.

c) $\Rightarrow$ d). Consider the decomposition (1) of T. Since  $T_p$  is injective it follows the existence of  $R_1$  an A-linear map which is inverse at left. Similar, from  $T_r$  being

injective it result the existence of  $R_2$  a  $\mathbb{R}\text{-linear}$  map which is inverse at left. The map  $R:F\to E$  given by:

$$\mathbf{R} = \left( \begin{array}{cc} \mathbf{R}_{\mathrm{r}} & \mathbf{0} \\ -\mathbf{R}_{\mathrm{p}} \alpha \mathbf{R}_{\mathrm{r}} & \mathbf{R}_{\mathrm{p}} \end{array} \right)$$

is a morphism from F to E with  $R \circ T = Id_E$ .

d) $\Rightarrow$ a). Let R : F  $\rightarrow$  E be the inverse at left of T and consider G = ker R together with the inclusion  $i: G \rightarrow F$ . From R  $\circ (1_F - T \circ R) = 0$  it results the existence of  $w \in \text{Hom}(F, G)$  such that  $T \circ R + i \circ w = 1_F$ . Then  $w \circ i = 1_G$  and  $w \circ T = 0$ . Let A = (T, i) : E  $\times$  G  $\rightarrow$  F and B = (R, w) : F  $\rightarrow$  E  $\times$  G. With the equations above it follows that A and B are isomorphisms with B = A<sup>-1</sup>. The equivalences from II are analogous.

**Corollary 2** Fix  $T \in Hom(E, F)$ . Then T is a monomorphism if and only if T(E) is a para-mixed subspace of F and the induced map  $T' : E \to T(E)$  is an isomorphism. Also, T is an epimorphism if and only if the co-induced map  $T'' : E / \ker T \to F$  is an isomorphism.

**Proof.** Suppose that T is a monomorphism. Since  $T_r$  is injective it results that  $T(E) \cap F_p = T_p(E_p)$  and so, T(E) is a para-mixed subspace in F. It follows also that  $T' \in Hom(E, T(E))$  and its paracomplex part  $T'_p$  is surjective. From T=injective we get that T' and  $T'_p$  are bijective maps and then T' is an isomorphism. Similar arguments hold for the second part.

Let us remark that an injective  $T \in Hom(E, F)$  is not a-priori a monomorphism and the example is provided by the inclusion  $\mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{A}$ . In order to include this class we consider:

**Definition 6**  $T \in Hom(E, F)$  is called cartesian monomorphism if it is injective and for every para-mixed linear space G and every map  $\alpha : G \to E$  we have that  $T \circ \alpha$  is a morphism if and only if  $\alpha$  is a morphism.

This notion is useful for another concept:

**Definition 7** A paracomplexification of the para-mixed linear space E is a pair  $(E^{p}, \rho)$  with  $E^{p}$  a paracomplex linear space and  $\rho \in Hom(E, E^{p})$  injective and satisfying  $\rho(E) + j\rho(E) = E^{p}$  and  $\rho(E) \cap j\rho(E) = \rho(E_{p})$ .

A characterization of this notion is given by:

Theorem 1 i) Every para-mixed linear space E have a paracomplexification.
ii) The morphism ρ is a cartesian monomorphism.

iii) A pair  $(E^p, \rho)$  is a paracomplexification of E if and only if  $E^p$  is a paracomplex linear space and the map  $\rho^* : Hom(E^p, F) \to Hom(E, F)$  given in Remark 1(vi) is bijective for any paracomplex linear space F.

**Proof.** i) Let  $E = E_r \times E_p$  the canonical decomposition of E and consider the space:

$$\mathsf{E}^{\mathsf{p}} = (\mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{r}} \otimes_{\mathbb{R}} \mathbb{A}) \times \mathsf{E}_{\mathsf{p}}.$$

It results that  $E^p$  is a paracomplex linear space. One define the map  $\rho : E \to E^p$  by  $\rho(x_2, x_1) = (x_2 \otimes 1, x_1)$  and a straightforward computation gives that  $(E^p, \rho)$  is a paracomplexification of E.

ii) Let G be a para-mixed linear space and  $\alpha : G \to E$  such that  $\rho \circ \alpha \in Hom(G, E^p)$ . Fix  $z \in G_p$ ; then:

$$\rho \circ \alpha(z) = \mathfrak{j}(\rho \circ \alpha)(\mathfrak{j}z) \in \rho(\mathsf{E}) \cap \mathfrak{j}\rho(\mathsf{E}) = \rho(\mathsf{E}_p)$$

and the injectivity of  $\rho$  yields that  $\alpha(z) \in E_p$ . Also,  $\rho \circ \alpha(jz) = j(\rho \circ \alpha(z)) = \rho(j\alpha(z))$  and again the injectivity of  $\rho$  gives  $\alpha(jz) = j\alpha(z)$ . These facts together with the  $\mathbb{R}$ -linearity means that  $\alpha \in \text{Hom}(G, E)$ .

iii) Fix  $(E^p, \rho)$  a paracomplexification of E, F a paracomplex linear space and  $u \in Hom(E, F)$ . Define then  $v : E^p \to F$ :

$$\nu(\rho(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{j}\rho(\mathbf{y})) := \mathbf{u}(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{j}\mathbf{u}(\mathbf{y})$$

for all  $x, y \in E$ . Since  $\rho(x) + j\rho(y) = \rho(x') + j\rho(y')$  if and only if  $y' - y \in E_p$ and x - x' = j(y' - y) it results that  $\nu$  is well defined. It follows that  $\nu$  is a  $\mathbb{A}$ -linear map and  $\nu \circ \rho = u$ . We get also the uniqueness of  $\nu$  with these two properties.  $\Box$ 

**Example 3** i) Let E be a real linear space endowed with the paracomplex structure J. Consider then  $E^p = (E, J) \oplus (E, -J)$  and the diagonal map  $\rho : E \to E^p$ . Then  $(E^p, \rho)$  is a paracomplexification of E. Indeed, every vector  $(e_1, e_2) \in E^p$ has a decomposition  $(e_1, e_2) = (x + Jy, x - Jy)$  with  $x, y \in E$ . More precisely,  $x = \frac{1}{2}(e_1 + e_2)$  and  $y = \frac{1}{2}(Je_1 - Je_2)$ .

Let now F be a paracomplex linear space and  $u : E \to F$  a  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear map. The unique  $\mathbb{A}$ -linear map  $v : E^p \to F$  satisfying  $v \circ \rho = u$  is:

$$v(e_1, e_2) = \frac{1}{2} \left( u(e_1) - ju(Je_1) \right) + \frac{1}{2} \left( u(e_2) + ju(Je_2) \right).$$

ii) Let E, F be para-mixed linear spaces and fix  $\rho : F \to F^p$  a paracomplexification of F. Then  $\rho_* : \text{Hom}(E,F) \to \text{Hom}(E,F^p)$  given in Remark 1(vi) is a cartesian monomorphism. In general,  $(\text{Hom}(E,F^p),\rho_*)$  is not a paracomplexification of Hom(E,F) since  $\text{Hom}(E,F^p)$  is a paracomplex linear space satisfying  $\rho_*(\text{Hom}(E,F^p)) \cap j\rho_*(\text{Hom}(E,F^p))$  but generally it do not satisfies  $\rho_*(\text{Hom}(E,F^p)) + j\rho_*(\text{Hom}(E,F^p)) = (\rho_*(\text{Hom}(E,F^p)))^p$ .

#### References

- T. Bailey, M. Eastwood, S. Gindikin, Smoothly parameterized Čech cohomology of complex manifolds, J. Geom. Anal., 15 (2005), no. 1, 9–23. MR2132263 (2006b:32013)
- [2] M. Crasmareanu, L.-I. Pişcoran, Weak para-CR structures on vertical bundles, Adv. Appl. Clifford Algebr., 26 (2016), no. 4, 1127–1136. MR3564462
- [3] V. Cruceanu, P. Fortuny; P. M. Gadea, A survey on paracomplex geometry, *Rocky Mountain J. Math.*, **26** (1996), no. 1, 83–115. MR1386154 (97c:53112)
- M. Jurchescu, Variétés mixtes, in Romanian-Finnish Seminar on Complex Analysis (Proc., Bucharest, 1976), 431–448, Lecture Notes in Math., 743, Springer, Berlin, 1979. MR0552907 (80m:32011)
- M. Jurchescu, *Espaces mixtes*, in "Complex analysis"-Fifth Romanian-Finnish Seminar, Part 2 (Bucharest, 1981), 37–57, Lecture Notes in Math., 1014, Springer, Berlin, 1983. MR0738113 (85j:32048)
- [6] M. Jurchescu, Variétés mixtes et cohomologie, *Riv. Mat. Univ. Parma*, (4) 10 (1984), special vol. 10, 55–79. MR0777315 (86e:32036)
- [7] F. Özdemir; M. Crasmareanu, Geometrical objects associated to a substructure, *Turkish J. Math.*, **35** (2011), no. 4, 717–728. MR2896417

Received: February 16, 2017

ACTA UNIV. SAPIENTIAE, MATHEMATICA, 9, 2 (2017) 283-290

DOI: 10.1515/ausm-2017-0021

## The sharp version of a strongly starlikeness condition

Olga Engel Babeş-Bolyai University, Cluj-Napoca, Romania email: engel\_olga@hotmail.com Abdul Rahman S. Juma University of Anbar, Ramadi, Iraq email: dr\_juma@hotmail.com

**Abstract.** In this paper we give the best form of a strongly starlikeness condition. Some consequences of this result are deduced. The basic tool of the research is the method of differential subordinations.

#### 1 Introduction

DE GRUYTER

Let  $\mathbb{U} = \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z| < 1\}$  be the open unit disk in the complex plane. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be the class of analytic functions f, which are defined on the unit disk  $\mathbb{U}$  and have the properties f(0) = f'(0) - 1 = 0. The subclass of  $\mathcal{A}$ , consisting of functions for which the domain  $f(\mathbb{U})$  is starlike with respect to 0 is denoted by S<sup>\*</sup>. An analytic characterization of S<sup>\*</sup> is given by

$$\mathsf{S}^* = \left\{ \mathsf{f} \in \mathcal{A} : \operatorname{Re} rac{z \mathsf{f}'(z)}{\mathsf{f}(z)} > \mathsf{0}, \, \, z \in \mathbb{U} 
ight\}.$$

In connection with the starlike functions has been introduced the following class

$$\mathrm{SS}^*(\alpha) = \left\{ \mathrm{f} \in \mathcal{A} : \left| rg rac{z \mathrm{f}'(z)}{\mathrm{f}(z)} \right| < lpha rac{\pi}{2}, \ \alpha \in (0, 1], \ z \in \mathbb{U} 
ight\},$$

2010 Mathematics Subject Classification: 11A25

Key words and phrases: starlike functions, strongly starlike functions, subordination

which is the class of strongly starlike functions of order  $\alpha$ . Another subclass of  $\mathcal{A}$  we deal with is the following

$$\mathcal{G}_{\mathfrak{b}} = \left\{ \mathsf{f} \in \mathcal{A} : \left| \frac{1 + \frac{z \mathsf{f}''(z)}{\mathsf{f}'(z)}}{\frac{z \mathsf{f}'(z)}{\mathsf{f}(z)}} - 1 \right| < \mathfrak{b}, \quad z \in \mathbb{U} \right\},\tag{1}$$

where b > 0.

The authors of [3] proved the following result:

**Theorem 1** If the function f belongs to the class  $\mathcal{G}_{\mathfrak{b}(\beta)}$  with

$$\mathfrak{b}(\beta) = \frac{\beta}{\sqrt{(1-\beta)^{1-\beta}(1+\beta)^{1+\beta}}},$$

where  $0 < \beta \leq 1$ , then  $f \in SS^*(\beta)$ .

Let  $-1 \le B < A \le 1$ . The class  $S^*(A, B)$  is defined by the equality

$$S^*(A,B) = \Big\{ f \in \mathcal{A} : \frac{zf'(z)}{f(z)} \prec \frac{1+Az}{1+Bz}, \ z \in \mathbb{U} \Big\}.$$

An other result regarding the class  $\mathcal{G}_{b}$  is the following theorem published in [4].

**Theorem 2** Assume that  $-1 \leq B < A \leq 1$  and  $b(1 + |A|)^2 \leq |A - B|$ . If  $f \in \mathcal{G}_b$ , then  $f \in S^*(A, B)$ .

The aim of this paper is to prove the sharp version of Theorem 1, and an improvement of Theorem 2.

In our work we need the following results.

#### 2 Preliminaries

Let f and g be analytic functions in U. The function f is said to be subordinate to g, written  $f \prec g$ , if there is a function w analytic in U, with w(0) = 0, |w(z)| < 1,  $z \in U$  and f(z) = g(w(z)),  $z \in U$ . Recall that if g is univalent, then  $f \prec g$  if and only if f(0) = g(0) and  $f(U) \subset g(U)$ . **Lemma 1** [1] Let  $p(z) = a + \sum_{k=n}^{\infty} a_k z^k$  be analytic in  $\mathbb{U}$  with  $p(z) \not\equiv a, n \ge 1$ and let  $q: \mathbb{U} \to \mathbb{C}$  be an analytic and univalent function with q(0) = a. If p is not subordinate to q, then there are two points  $z_0 \in \mathbb{U}$ ,  $|z_0| = r_0$  and  $\zeta_0 \in \partial \mathbb{U}$ and a real number  $m \in [n, \infty)$ , so that q is defined in  $\zeta_0$ ,  $p(\mathbb{U}(0, r_0)) \subset q(\mathbb{U})$ , and:

- (i)  $p(z_0) = q(\zeta_0)$ ,
- (ii)  $z_0 p'(z_0) = m\zeta_0 q'(\zeta_0)$ ,
- (iii) Re  $\left(1 + \frac{z_0 p''(z_0)}{p'(z_0)}\right) \ge m \operatorname{Re} \left(1 + \frac{\zeta_0 q''(\zeta_0)}{q'(\zeta_0)}\right)$ .

We note that  $z_0p'(z_0)$  is the outward normal to the curve  $p(\partial U(0, r_0))$  at the point  $p(z_0)$ , while  $\partial U(0, r_0)$  denotes the border of the disc  $U(0, r_0)$ .

A basic result we need in our research is the following:

Lemma 2 If 
$$f \in \mathcal{A}$$
,  $b \in [0,1)$ , and  $p(z) = \frac{zf'(z)}{f(z)}$ , then the inequality  
 $\left|\frac{zp'(z)}{p^2(z)}\right| < b, \ z \in \mathbb{U},$  (2)

implies that

$$\mathbf{p}(z) \prec \frac{1}{1-\mathbf{b}z}$$

The result is sharp.

**Proof.** If the subordination  $p(z) \prec q(z) = \frac{1}{1-bz}$  does not holds, then there are two points  $z_0 \in \mathbb{U}$ ,  $|z_0| = r_0 < 1$  and  $\zeta_0 \in \partial \mathbb{U}$  and a real number  $\mathfrak{m} \in [1, \infty)$ , so that q is defined in  $\zeta_0$ ,  $p(\mathbb{U}(0, r_0)) \subset q(\mathbb{U})$ , and:

$$p(z_0) = q(\zeta_0) = \frac{1}{1 - b\zeta_0}$$
$$z_0 p'(z_0) = m\zeta_0 q'(\zeta_0) = m\frac{b\zeta_0}{(1 - b\zeta_0)^2}.$$

Thus we get

$$\frac{z_0 p'(z_0)}{p^2(z_0)} = mb\zeta_0.$$
 (3)

Since  $|\mathsf{mb}\zeta_0| \ge b$ , it follows that the equality (3) contradicts (2), and the proof is done.

#### 3 Main results

The following theorem is the sharp version of Theorem 1.

**Theorem 3** If  $\alpha \in (0,1)$ , and  $f \in \mathcal{G}_{b(\alpha)}$ , where  $b(\alpha) = \sin\left(\alpha \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ , then  $f \in SS^*(\alpha)$ . The result is sharp.

**Proof.** If we denote  $p(z) = \frac{zg'(z)}{g(z)}$ , then the condition  $f \in \mathcal{G}_{\mathfrak{b}(\alpha)}$  becomes

$$\left|\frac{z\mathfrak{p}'(z)}{\mathfrak{p}^2(z)}\right| < \mathfrak{b}(\alpha), \quad z \in \mathbb{U},\tag{4}$$

and according to Lemma 2 we get

$$p(z) \prec q(z) = \frac{1}{1 - b(\alpha)z}$$

The domain  $D = q(\mathbb{U})$  is symmetric with respect to the real axis and the boundary of D is the curve

$$\Gamma = \begin{cases} x(\theta) = \operatorname{Re} \frac{1}{1 - b(\alpha)e^{i\theta}} = \frac{1 - b(\alpha)\cos\theta}{1 + b^2(\alpha) - 2b(\alpha)\cos\theta}, \\ y(\theta) = \operatorname{Im} \frac{1}{1 - b(\alpha)e^{i\theta}} = \frac{b(\alpha)\sin\theta}{1 + b^2(\alpha) - 2b(\alpha)\cos\theta}, \end{cases} \quad \theta \in [-\pi, \pi].$$

The subordination  $p(z) \prec q(z)$  implies that  $|\arg(p(z))| \leq \arctan(M)$ , where M is the slope of the tangent line to the curve  $\Gamma$  trough the origin. The equation of the tangent line is

$$\frac{\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}(\theta)}{\mathbf{x}'(\theta)} = \frac{\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{y}(\theta)}{\mathbf{y}'(\theta)}$$

This tangent line crosses the origin if and only if

$$\frac{\mathbf{x}(\theta)}{\mathbf{x}'(\theta)} = \frac{\mathbf{y}(\theta)}{\mathbf{y}'(\theta)},$$

and this equation is equivalent to

$$2b(\alpha)\cos^2\theta - (3b^2(\alpha) + 1)\cos\theta + b(\alpha)(b^2(\alpha) + 1) = 0.$$

After a short calculation we get  $\cos \theta = b(\alpha)$  and this implies

$$M = \frac{y'(\theta)}{x'(\theta)} = \frac{y(\theta)}{x(\theta)} = \frac{b(\alpha)\sin\theta}{1 - b(\alpha)\cos\theta} = \frac{b(\alpha)}{\sqrt{1 - b^2(\alpha)}}$$

Finally if we put  $b(\alpha) = \sin\left(\alpha \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ , then it follows that  $|\arg(p(z))| < \arctan(M) = \arctan\frac{b(\alpha)}{\sqrt{1-b^2(\alpha)}} = \alpha \frac{\pi}{2}, \ z \in \mathbb{U}$ . Thus we have proved the implication

$$\left|\frac{zp'(z)}{p^2(z)}\right| < \sin\left(\alpha\frac{\pi}{2}\right) \; \Rightarrow \; |\arg(p(z))| < \arctan(M) = \alpha\frac{\pi}{2},$$

and the proof is done.

Putting  $\alpha = 1$  in Theorem 3, we get the following starlikeness condition, which is the sharp version of Corollary 1 from [3].

Corollary 1 If  $f \in A$  and

$$\left|rac{1+rac{z{
m f}^{\prime\prime}(z)}{{
m f}^{\prime}(z)}}{rac{z{
m f}^{\prime}(z)}{{
m f}(z)}}-1
ight|<1,\ \ z\in\mathbb{U},$$

then  $f \in S^*$ . For  $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}$ , we get the sharp version of Corollary 2 from [3].

Corollary 2 If  $f \in \mathcal{A}$  and

$$\left|\frac{1+\frac{zf''(z)}{f'(z)}}{\frac{zf'(z)}{f(z)}}-1\right|<\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \quad z\in\mathbb{U},$$

then  $f \in SS^*\left(rac{1}{2}
ight)$ .

**Theorem 4** If  $f \in \mathcal{G}_b$  and b(1 + A - B + |B|) < A - B, then  $f \in S^*(A, B)$ .

**Proof.** Let  $q, h : \mathbb{U} \to \mathbb{C}$  be the functions defined by

$$q(z) = \frac{1}{1 - bz}, \ h(z) = \frac{1 + Az}{1 + Bz}.$$

According to Lemma 2 we have  $p(z) = \frac{zf'(z)}{f(z)} \prec q(z)$  which is equivalent to

$$\mathbf{p}(\mathbb{U}) \subset \mathbf{q}(\mathbb{U}). \tag{5}$$

We will prove that  $q(\mathbb{U}) \subset h(\mathbb{U})$ . A simple calculation shows that the domains  $q(\mathbb{U})$  and  $h(\mathbb{U})$  are convex.

The border of the domain  $q(\mathbb{U})$  is the curve

$$\Gamma: q(e^{i\theta}) = \frac{1}{1 - be^{i\theta}}, \quad \theta \in [0, 2\pi],$$

and the border of  $h(\mathbb{U})$  is the curve

$$\Delta: \quad \mathfrak{h}(e^{\mathfrak{i}\eta}) = \frac{1 + Ae^{\mathfrak{i}\eta}}{1 + Be^{\mathfrak{i}\eta}}, \quad \eta \in [0, 2\pi].$$

The inequality b(1 + A - B + |B|) < A - B is equivalent to  $\frac{b}{1-b} < \frac{A-B}{1+|B|}$ . This inequality implies

$$|q(e^{i\theta}) - 1| = \frac{b}{|1 - be^{i\theta}|} \le \frac{b}{1 - b} < \frac{A - B}{1 + |B|} \le \frac{A - B}{|1 + Be^{i\eta}|} = |h(e^{i\eta}) - 1|.$$

Thus we get

 $|q(e^{i\theta}) - 1| < |h(e^{i\eta}) - 1|, \text{ for every } \theta, \eta \in [0, 2\pi].$ (6)

Since  $1 \in q(\mathbb{U})$  and  $1 \in h(\mathbb{U})$ , the inequality (6) implies that the curve  $\Gamma$  is inside the curve  $\Delta$ .

This means that

$$\mathbf{q}(\mathbb{U}) \subset \mathbf{h}(\mathbb{U}). \tag{7}$$

For example if we consider

$$q(z) = \frac{1}{1 - 0.6z}$$
 and  $h(z) = \frac{1 + 0.3z}{1 - 0.5z}$ 

and the inequality b(1 + A - B + |B|) < A - B is satisfied for b = 0.6, A = 0.3 and B = -0.5 then we obtain the following graphics:



which shows that  $q(\mathbb{U}) \subset h(\mathbb{U})$ . For b = 0.7, A = 0.3 and B = -0.5 the inequality b(1 + A - B + |B|) < A - B is not satisfied and consequently we obtain the following image:



which shows that  $q(\mathbb{U}) \not\subset h(\mathbb{U})$ . Finally (5) and (7) implies  $p(\mathbb{U}) \subset h(\mathbb{U})$  and since h is univalent we infer  $\frac{zf'(z)}{f(z)} = p(z) \prec h(z), z \in \mathbb{U}$ . This subordination is equivalent to  $f \in S^*(A, B)$ .

If  $0 \le B < A \le 1$ , then we get the following corollary, which improve the result of Theorem 2.

**Corollary 3** Let  $0 \le B < A \le 1$  and  $b \in (0, +\infty)$  such that  $b(1+A) \le 1+B$ . If  $f \in \mathcal{G}_b$ , then  $f \in S^*(A, B)$ .

#### References

- S. S. Miller, P. T. Mocanu, Differential Subordinations. Theory and Applications, Marcel Dekker, New York, Basel 2000.
- [2] S.S. Miller, P.T. Mocanu, The theory and applications of second-order differential subordinations, *Stud. Univ. Babeş-Bolyai Math.*, **34** (4) (1989), 3–33.

- [3] M. Nunokawa, S. Owa, H. Saitoh, N. Takahashi, On a strongly starlikeness criteria, Bull. Inst. Math. Acad. Sinica, 31 (3) (2003), 195–199.
- [4] J. Sokól, L. Trojnar-Spelina, On a sufficient condition for strongly starlikeness, J. Ineq. Appl., 383 (1) (2013).

Received: January 8, 2017

ACTA UNIV. SAPIENTIAE, MATHEMATICA, 9, 2 (2017) 291-302

DOI: 10.1515/ausm-2017-0022

# A result regarding monotonicity of the Gamma function

Pál A. Kupán

DE GRUYTER

Department of Mathematics-Informatics, Faculty of Technical and Human Sciences, Sapientia Hungarian University of Transylvania email: kupanp@ms.sapientia.ro Gyöngyvér Márton Department of Mathematics-Informatics, Faculty of Technical and Human Sciences, Sapientia Hungarian University of Transylvania email: mgyongyi@ms.sapientia.ro

Róbert Szász

Department of Mathematics-Informatics, Faculty of Technical and Human Sciences, Sapientia Hungarian University of Transylvania email: rszasz@ms.sapientia.ro

**Abstract.** In this paper we analyze the monotony of the function  $\frac{\ln \Gamma(x)}{\ln(x^2+\tau)-\ln(x+\tau)}$ , for  $\tau > 0$ . Such functions have been used from different authors to obtain inequalities concerning the gamma function.

#### 1 Introduction

In [8] the author proved the following double inequality:

$$\frac{x^2+1}{x+1} \le \Gamma(x+1) \le \frac{x^2+2}{x+2}, \ x \in [0,1].$$
(1)

In [12] the authors improved this inequality proving that

$$\left(\frac{x^2+1}{x+1}\right)^{2(1-\gamma)} \le \Gamma(x+1) \le \left(\frac{x^2+1}{x+1}\right)^{\gamma}, \ x \in [0,1].$$
(2)

2010 Mathematics Subject Classification: 33B15

Key words and phrases: Gamma function, monotonic function

Other improvements of (1) can be found in [9], [10] and [11]. The inequality (2) is equivalent to

$$2(1-\gamma) > \frac{\ln \Gamma(x+1)}{\ln(x^2+1) - \ln(x+1)} > \gamma, \quad x \in (0,1).$$

The authors of [12] proved inequality (2) using the monotony of the function

$$g:(0,\infty)\to\mathbb{R}, \ g(x)=rac{\ln\Gamma(x+1)}{\ln(x^2+1)-\ln(x+1)}.$$

In connection with this function they formulated the following conjecture: if  $\tau > 0$ , then the mapping  $u_{\tau} : (0, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}$  defined by

$$\mathfrak{u}_{\tau}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{cases} \frac{\ln\Gamma(\mathbf{x})}{\ln(\mathbf{x}^{2}+\tau) - \ln(\mathbf{x}+\tau)}, \ \mathbf{x} \neq 1\\ -(1+\tau)\gamma, \qquad \mathbf{x} = 1 \end{cases}$$
(3)

is strictly increasing. This conjecture was confirmed for  $\tau \in (0, 1)$  in [6]. We found a counterexample regarding this conjecture: if  $\tau = 1000$ , then

$$\begin{split} \mathfrak{u}_{\tau}(11) &= \frac{\ln\Gamma(11)}{\ln\frac{1121}{1011}} = \frac{\ln 3628800}{\ln\frac{1121}{1011}} < \frac{\ln 24^5}{\ln\frac{1121}{1011}} = \frac{\ln 24}{\ln\left(\frac{1121}{1011}\right)^{\frac{1}{5}}} = \frac{\ln\Gamma(5)}{\ln\left(\frac{1121}{1011}\right)^{\frac{1}{5}}} \\ &< \frac{\ln\Gamma(5)}{\ln\left(\frac{1025}{1005}\right)} = \mathfrak{u}_{\tau}(5). \end{split}$$

Numerical results suggest that there is a value  $\tau_0 \in (212, 213)$  such that if  $\tau \in (0, \tau_0)$  then  $u_{\tau}$  is strictly increasing. We will prove a partial result regarding this question.

**Theorem 1** The function  $u_{\tau}$  is strictly increasing on the interval  $(0, \infty)$  for all  $\tau$ ,  $0 < \tau \leq 25$ .

#### 2 Preliminaries

In order to prove our main results we need the following lemmas.

**Lemma 1** [3] Let  $h, k : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$  be two continuous functions which are differentiable on (a,b). Further let  $k'(x) \neq 0$ ,  $x \in (a,b)$ . If h'/k' is strictly increasing (resp. decreasing) on (a,b), then the functions

$$x\longmapsto \frac{h(x)-h(a)}{k(x)-k(a)} \qquad x\longmapsto \frac{h(x)-h(b)}{k(x)-k(b)}$$

are also strictly increasing (resp. decreasing) on (a, b).

**Lemma 2** If  $\tau > 1$ , then the function  $u_{\tau} : (0, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}$  defined by

$$u_{\tau}(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{\ln \Gamma(x)}{\ln(x^2 + \tau) - \ln(x + \tau)}, & x \neq 1\\ -(1 + \tau)\gamma, & x = 1 \end{cases}$$

is strictly increasing on the interval  $(0, x_1)$ , where  $x_1$  is the positive root of the equation  $x^2 + 2\tau x - \tau = 0$ .

**Proof.** According to [4] we have  $\psi(x) = \frac{\Gamma'(x)}{\Gamma(x)} = -\frac{1}{x} - \gamma + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{n(n+x)}$ . It is easily seen that  $\frac{1}{2} > x_1 = \frac{\tau}{\tau + \sqrt{\tau^2 + \tau}} > \frac{1}{4}$ . If  $x \in (0, x_1)$ , then  $\frac{\tau - 2\tau x - x^2}{(x^2 + \tau)(x + \tau)} > 0$ ,  $\frac{1}{x} + \gamma - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{n(n+x)} > 0$ ,  $\Gamma(x) > 1$ , and this implies

$$\mathfrak{u}_{\tau}'(x) = \frac{\left(\frac{1}{x} + \gamma - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{n(n+x)}\right) \ln \frac{x+\tau}{x^2+\tau} + \frac{\tau - 2\tau x - x^2}{(x^2+\tau)(x+\tau)} \ln \Gamma(x)}{\ln^2 \left(\frac{x^2+\tau}{x+\tau}\right)} > 0.$$

Thus  $u_{\tau}$  is strictly increasing on the interval  $(0, x_1)$ .

**Lemma 3** The unique positive root of the equation  $\psi(x) = -\frac{1}{x} - \gamma + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{(n+x)n} = 0$  is  $x_2 = 1.4616...$  If  $\tau > 1$ , then the function

$$\nu: (x_1, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}, \quad \nu(x) = \frac{-\frac{1}{x} - \gamma + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{(n+x)n}}{\frac{2x}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau}}, \tag{4}$$

is strictly increasing on the interval  $(x_1, x_2)$ , where  $x_1$  is defined in Lemma 2.

**Proof.** We have 
$$\nu'(x) = \frac{A(x)}{\left(\frac{2x}{x^2+\tau} - \frac{1}{x+\tau}\right)^2}$$
, where  

$$A(x) = \left(\frac{1}{x^2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n+x)^2}\right) \left(\frac{2x}{x^2+\tau} - \frac{1}{x+\tau}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{x} + \gamma - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{n(n+x)}\right) \left(\frac{-2x^2+2\tau}{(x^2+\tau)^2} + \frac{1}{(x+\tau)^2}\right).$$
(5)

Since  $\frac{1}{3} < x_1$ , and the following inequalities hold

$$\frac{1}{x^2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n+x)^2} > \frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{\gamma}{x} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n(n+x)} > 0, \ x \in (\frac{1}{3}, x_2),$$
  
and 
$$\frac{2x}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau} = \frac{x^2 + 2\tau x - \tau}{(x + \tau)(x^2 + \tau)} > 0, \quad x \in (x_1, x_2),$$

it follows that

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{A}(\mathbf{x}) &> \left(\frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{\gamma}{x} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n(n+x)}\right) \left(\frac{2x}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau}\right) \\ &+ \left(\frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{\gamma}{x} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n(n+x)}\right) \left(\frac{-2x^3 + 2\tau x}{(x^2 + \tau)^2} + \frac{x}{(x + \tau)^2}\right) \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{\gamma}{x} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n(n+x)}\right) \left(\frac{2x^3 + 2\tau x}{(x^2 + \tau)^2} - \frac{x + \tau}{(x + \tau)^2} + \frac{-2x^3 + 2\tau x}{(x^2 + \tau)^2} + \frac{x}{(x + \tau)^2}\right) \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{\gamma}{x} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n(n+x)}\right) \left(\frac{4\tau x}{(x^2 + \tau)^2} - \frac{\tau}{(x + \tau)^2}\right) \\ &= \tau \left(\frac{1}{x^2} + \frac{\gamma}{x} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n(n+x)}\right) \left(\frac{x^3(4 - x) + 6\tau x^2 + \tau^2(4x - 1)}{(x^2 + \tau)^2(x + \tau)^2}\right) \\ &> 0, \ x \in (x_1, x_2), \end{split}$$

and we get  $\nu'(x) > 0$ ,  $x \in (x_1, x_2)$ . Thus  $\nu$  is a strictly increasing function on the interval  $(x_1, x_2)$ .

**Lemma 4** Suppose  $\tau > 1$ . The equation  $\psi(x) = \psi'(x)$  has a unique positive root  $x_3 = 2.2324...$  The function  $\nu : (x_1, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}$  defined by (4) is strictly increasing on the interval  $(x_2, x_3)$ .

**Proof.** We will prove this lemma in two steps. We have  $x_2 < \frac{3}{2}$ . In the first step we discuss the case  $(x_2, \frac{3}{2})$ .

According to the mean value theorem for every  $x \in (x_2, \frac{3}{2})$  there are the values  $c_x, d_x \in (x_2, x)$  such that  $\psi(x) = \psi(x) - \psi(x_2) = \psi'(c_x)(x - x_2)$  and  $\psi'(x_2) - \psi'(x) = -\psi''(d_x)(x - x_2)$ . These two equalities imply

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}) = \psi(\mathbf{x}) - \psi(\mathbf{x}_2) = \psi'(\mathbf{c}_{\mathbf{x}})(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_2) < \psi'(\mathbf{x}_2)\left(\frac{3}{2} - \mathbf{x}_2\right) < \frac{4}{100}\psi'(\mathbf{x}_2)$$

and

$$\begin{split} \psi'(x_2) - \psi'(x) &= -\psi''(d_x)(x - x_2) = 2(x - x_2) \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n + d_x)^3}\right) \\ &< \frac{8}{100} \psi'\left(\frac{3}{2}\right) \le \frac{8}{100} \psi'(x). \end{split}$$

Thus we get  $0<\psi(x)<\frac{4}{100}\big(1+\frac{8}{100}\big)\psi'(x)<\frac{1}{12}\psi'(x),\ x\in(x_2,\frac{3}{2})$  and consequently

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{A}(x) > \psi(x) \bigg( \frac{24x}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{12}{x + \tau} + \frac{2x^2 - 2\tau}{(x^2 + \tau)^2} - \frac{1}{(x + \tau)^2} \bigg) \\ = \psi(x) \frac{\mathsf{B}(x)}{(x^2 + \tau)^2 (x + \tau)^2}, \end{split}$$

where  $B(x) = 12x^5 + (1 + 36\tau)x^4 + 24\tau^2x^3 + 4\tau x^2(x-1) + \tau^2 x(26x-16) + 24x\tau^3 - 14\tau^3 - \tau^2$ , and A is defined by (5). It is easily seen that if  $x \in (x_2, \frac{3}{2})$ , then B(x) > 0, and consequently  $\nu'(x) > 0$ , for  $x \in (x_2, \frac{3}{2})$ .

In the second step suppose  $x \in (\frac{3}{2}, x_3)$ . We have in this case  $0 < \psi(x) \le \psi'(x)$ , where  $\psi(x) = \frac{\Gamma'(x)}{\Gamma(x)}$ . A short calculation leads to

$$A(x) > \psi(x) \left( \frac{2x}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau} + \frac{2x^2 - 2\tau}{(x^2 + \tau)^2} - \frac{1}{(x + \tau)^2} \right) = \psi(x) \frac{C(x)}{(x^2 + \tau)^2 (x + \tau)^2},$$

where  $C(x) = x^5 + (1+3\tau)x^4 + 4\tau x^2(x-1) + \tau^2 x(4x-5) + \tau^2(2x^3-1) + \tau^3(2x-3) > 0$ ,  $x \in (\frac{3}{2}, x_3)$ . Consequently we obtain  $\nu'(x) > 0$ ,  $x \in (\frac{3}{2}, x_3)$ , and the proof is completed.

**Lemma 5** If  $x \in [2,3)$ , then

$$\frac{6}{7}(\ln x - \frac{7}{25}) > \ln \Gamma(x), \tag{6}$$

and

$$-\frac{1}{x} - \gamma + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{n(n+x)} > \ln x - \frac{7}{25}.$$
 (7)

If  $\tau = 25$ , then

$$\ln \frac{x^2 + \tau}{x + \tau} \ge \frac{6}{7} \left( \frac{2x}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau} \right), \quad x \in [2.23, 3].$$
(8)

**Proof.** Let  $v_5 : [2,3] \to \mathbb{R}$  be the function defined by  $v_5(x) = \frac{6}{7}(\ln x - \frac{7}{25}) - \ln \Gamma(x)$ . We have

$$v_{5}'(x) = \frac{6}{7x} - \psi(x) = \frac{13}{7x} + \gamma - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{n(n+x)},$$

 $\square$ 

and

$$v_5''(x) = -\frac{6}{7x^2} - \psi'(x) = -\frac{13}{7x^2} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n+x)^2} < 0, \ x \in [2,3].$$

The monotony of  $\nu'_5$  and the inequalities  $\nu'_5(2) > 0$ ,  $\nu'_5(3) < 0$  implies that the equation  $\nu'_5(x) = 0$  has exactly one root  $x_1 \in (2,3)$  and  $\nu'_5(x) > 0$ ,  $x \in (2,x_1)$ , and  $\nu'_5(x) < 0$ ,  $x \in (x_1,3)$ .

The monotony of  $v_5$  implies

$$v_5(x) \ge \min\{v_5(2), v_5(3)\} > 0, \ x \in (2,3),$$

and thus the inequality (6) holds.

In order to prove (7), we define the function  $\nu_6: [2,3] \to \mathbb{R}$ ,

$$v_6(x) = \psi(x) - \ln x + \frac{7}{25} = -\frac{1}{x} - \gamma + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{n(n+x)} - \ln x + \frac{7}{25}.$$

We have  $\nu'_6(x) = -\frac{1}{x} + \psi'(x) = -\frac{1}{x} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n+x)^2} > 0$ ,  $x \in [2,3]$ , and consequently

 $\nu_6(x) \geq \nu_6(2) > 0, \ x \in [2,3].$ 

Thus the inequality (7) holds.

The third inequality can be proved as follows.

Let  $v_7: [2.23, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}$  be the function defined by  $v_7(x) = \ln \frac{x^2 + \tau}{x + \tau} - \frac{6}{7} \left( \frac{2x}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau} \right)$ . We have  $v_7'(x) = \frac{D(x)}{(x^2 + \tau)^2(x + \tau)^2}$ , where  $\alpha = \frac{6}{7}$  and  $D(x) = x^5 + (3\tau + 3\alpha)x^4 + (2\tau^2 + 4\alpha\tau)x^3 + 2(1+\alpha)\tau^2x^2 + (2\tau^3 - (4\alpha + 1)\tau^2)x - (2\alpha + 1)\tau^3 + \alpha\tau^2$ . A suitable alignment in the numerator of  $v_7'$  shows that  $v_7'(x) > 0$ ,  $x \in [2.23, 3]$ . Thus we get

$$v_7(x) \ge v_7(2.23) > 0, \ x \in [2.23, 3],$$

and the inequality (8) follows.

**Lemma 6** If  $x \in [3, \infty)$ , then

$$(x-2)(\ln x - \frac{1}{4}) > \ln \Gamma(x).$$
 (9)

If  $x \in [3, \infty)$ , then

$$-\frac{1}{x} - \gamma + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{n(n+x)} > \ln x - \frac{1}{4}, \quad x \in (3,\infty).$$
(10)

If  $x \in [3,\infty)$ , and  $\tau = 25$ , then

$$\ln \frac{x^2 + \tau}{x + \tau} \ge (x - 2) \left( \frac{2x}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau} \right), \quad x \in (3, \infty).$$
(11)

**Proof.** In order to prove inequality (9) we define the function  $\nu_8 : [3, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}$  by  $\nu_8(x) = (x-2)(\ln x - \frac{1}{4}) - \ln \Gamma(x)$ . We have

$$\nu'_8(x) = \ln x - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{x-1}{x} + \gamma - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{n(n+x)},$$

and

$$v_8''(x) = \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{x^2} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n+x)^2}.$$

It is easily seen that

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n+x)^2} < \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n+x)(n-1+x)} = \frac{1}{x}, \ x \in [3,\infty).$$

Thus we have  $\nu_8''(x) > 0, x \in [3,\infty)$ , consequently  $\nu_8'$  is strictly increasing and

$$\nu'_8(x) > \nu'_8(3) = \ln 3 + \gamma - 1 - \frac{5}{12} > 0, \ x \in (3, \infty).$$

This means that  $\nu_8$  is strictly increasing too and

$$v_8(x) > v_8(3) = \ln 3 - \frac{1}{4} - \ln 2 > 0, \ x \in (3, \infty).$$

The inequality (10) can be proved as follows. Let the function  $\nu_9 : [3, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}$  be defined by  $\nu_9(x) = -\frac{1}{x} - \gamma + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{n(n+x)} - \ln x + \frac{1}{4}$ . We have

$$v'_{9}(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n+x)^{2}} - \frac{1}{x}.$$

Since

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n+x)^2} > \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n+x)(n+1+x)} = \frac{1}{x}, \ x \in [3,\infty),$$

it follows that  $\nu'_{9}(x) > 0$ ,  $x \in [3, \infty)$ , consequently  $\nu_{9}$  is strictly increasing and

$$v_9(x) > v_9(3) = 1 + \frac{3}{4} - \gamma - \ln 3 > 0, \ x \in (3, \infty).$$

Finally, in order to prove (11), we define the function  $v_{10} : [3, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}$  by  $v_{10}(x) = \ln \frac{x^2 + \tau}{x + \tau} - (x - 2) \left(\frac{2x}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau}\right)$ , where  $\tau = 25$ . We have

$$\begin{split} \nu_{10}'(x) &= (x-2) \left( \frac{2x^2 - 2\tau}{(x^2 + \tau)^2} - \frac{1}{(x + \tau)^2} \right) \\ &= (x-2) \frac{x^4 + 4\tau x^3 + 2(\tau^2 - 2\tau)x^2 - 4\tau^2 x - 2\tau^3 - \tau^2}{(x^2 + \tau)^2(x + \tau)^2} \\ &= (x-2) \frac{x^4 + 100x^3 + 1150x^2 - 2500x - 31875}{(x^2 + \tau)^2(x + \tau)^2}. \end{split}$$

The Descartes rule of signs implies that the equation  $x^4 + 100x^3 + 1150x^2 - 2500x - 31875 = 0$  has no more than one positive root, thus it is easily seen that the equation  $v'_{10}(x) = 0$  has exactly one root  $x_0 = 5.13...$  This means that  $v_{10}$  is stictly decreasing on the interval  $[3, x_0]$  and strictly increasing on  $[x_0, \infty)$ . Consequently  $\min_{x \in [3,\infty)} v_{10}(x) = v_{10}(x_0) = 0.01... > 0$ , and this implies

 $\nu_{10}(x)>0, \ \, {\rm for \ \, all } x\in [3,\infty).$ 

#### 3 Proof of the main result

In this section we shall prove the main theorems.

**Theorem 2** Let the function  $g_{\alpha,\beta}:(0,\infty) \to \mathbb{R}$  be defined by

$$g_{\alpha,\beta}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{cases} \frac{\ln(\mathbf{x}^2 + \alpha) - \ln(\mathbf{x} + \alpha)}{\ln(\mathbf{x}^2 + \beta) - \ln(\mathbf{x} + \beta)}, & \mathbf{x} \in (0, 1) \cup (1, \infty) \\ \frac{1 + \beta}{1 + \alpha}, & \mathbf{x} = 1. \end{cases}$$
(12)

If  $\alpha > \beta > 0$ , then the mapping  $g_{\alpha,\beta}$  is strictly increasing on the interval  $(0,\infty)$ .

**Proof.** We will prove the theorem in two steps. Let  $x_1 = \frac{\beta}{\beta + \sqrt{\beta^2 + \beta}}$  be the positive root of the equation  $x^2 + 2\beta x - \beta = 0$ , and let  $x_2 = \frac{\alpha}{\alpha + \sqrt{\alpha^2 + \alpha}}$  be the positive root of  $x^2 + 2\alpha x - \alpha = 0$ .

In the first step let  $x \in (0,1)$ . Since  $\left(\frac{x^2+2\alpha x-\alpha}{x^2+2\beta x-\beta}\right)' = \frac{2(\alpha-\beta)(x-x^2)}{(x^2+2\beta x-\beta)^2} > 0$ ,  $x \in (0,x_1) \cup (x_2,1)$ , it follows that the function  $h:(0,\infty) \to \mathbb{R}$  defined by

$$h(x) = \frac{\left(\ln(x^2 + \alpha) - \ln(x + \alpha)\right)'}{\left(\ln(x^2 + \beta) - \ln(x + \beta)\right)'} = \frac{x^2 + \beta}{x^2 + \alpha} \cdot \frac{x + \beta}{x + \alpha} \cdot \frac{x^2 + 2\alpha x - \alpha}{x^2 + 2\beta x - \beta},$$

is strictly increasing on the intervals  $(0, x_1)$  and  $(x_2, 1)$ , (because h is a product of positive strictly increasing functions). Now Lemma 1 implies that  $g_{\alpha,\beta}$  is strictly increasing on  $(0, x_1)$  and  $(x_2, 1)$  too. On the other hand

$$g'_{\alpha,\beta}(x) = rac{\mathrm{D}(x)}{(\ln(x^2+\beta) - \ln(x+\beta))^2},$$

where

$$\mathsf{D}(\mathsf{x}) = \frac{x^2 + 2\alpha x - \alpha}{(x^2 + \alpha)(x + \alpha)} \ln \frac{x^2 + \beta}{x + \beta} - \frac{x^2 + 2\beta x - \beta}{(x^2 + \beta)(x + \beta)} \ln \frac{x^2 + \alpha}{x + \alpha}$$

Since  $\frac{x^2+2\alpha x-\alpha}{(x^2+\alpha)(x+\alpha)} \ln \frac{x^2+\beta}{x+\beta} > 0$ ,  $x \in (x_1, x_2)$ , and  $\frac{x^2+2\beta x-\beta}{(x^2+\beta)(x+\beta)} \ln \frac{x^2+\alpha}{x+\alpha} < 0$ ,  $x \in (x_1, x_2)$ , it follows that D(x) > 0,  $x \in (x_1, x_2)$ , and consequently g'(x) > 0 $0, x \in (x_1, x_2).$ 

We have deduced that  $g_{\alpha,\beta}$  is a strictly increasing function on the intervals  $(0, x_1), (x_1, x_2), \text{ and } (x_2, 1).$  The continuity of  $g_{\alpha,\beta}$  implies that this function is strictly increasing on (0, 1).

In the second step we prove that  $g_{\alpha,\beta}$  is strictly increasing on  $(1,\infty)$ . We will prove that

$$D(x) > 0, \quad x \in (1, \infty).$$
(13)

Let  $k: (0,\infty) \to \mathbb{R}$  be the function defined by  $k(\tau) = \frac{\ln(x^2+\tau) - \ln(x+\tau)}{\frac{2x}{\sqrt{2}+\tau} - \frac{1}{x+\tau}}$ . The following equivalence chain holds

$$g'_{\alpha,\beta}(\mathbf{x}) > 0 \quad \Leftrightarrow \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{x}) > 0 \quad \Leftrightarrow \mathbf{k}(\beta) > \mathbf{k}(\alpha),$$
 (14)

providing that  $x \in (1, \infty)$ , and  $\alpha > \beta > 0$ .

Consequently in order to prove that  $g_{\alpha,\beta}$  is strictly increasing we have to show that if  $x \in (1,\infty)$  is a fixed number, then k is strictly decreasing on  $(0,\infty)$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathsf{k}'(\tau) &= \frac{\mathsf{E}(\tau)}{(\frac{2x}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau})^2}, \\ \mathsf{E}(\tau) &= \left(\frac{1}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau}\right) \left(\frac{2x}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau}\right) + \left(\frac{2x}{(x^2 + \tau)^2} - \frac{1}{(x + \tau)^2}\right) \ln \frac{x^2 + \tau}{x + \tau} \end{aligned}$$

It is easily seen that if  $\tau \in (0,\infty)$  and  $x \in (1,\infty)$ , then  $\frac{1}{x^2+\tau} - \frac{1}{x+\tau} < 0$ ,  $\frac{2x}{x^2+\tau} - \frac{1}{x+\tau} > 0$ ,  $\ln \frac{x^2+\tau}{x+\tau} > 0$ . This second case has two sub-cases.

First suppose that  $\frac{2x}{(x^2+\tau)^2} - \frac{1}{(x+\tau)^2} \leq 0$ , for some  $x \in (1,\infty)$ ,  $\tau \in (0,\infty)$ . In this case we have  $\left(\frac{1}{x^2+\tau} - \frac{1}{x+\tau}\right) \left(\frac{2x}{x^2+\tau} - \frac{1}{x+\tau}\right) < 0$  and  $\left(\frac{2x}{(x^2+\tau)^2} - \frac{1}{(x+\tau)^2}\right) \ln \frac{x^2+\tau}{x+\tau} \leq 0$ . Thus it follows  $E(\tau) < 0$ , and so we get  $k'(\tau) < 0$ , and we are done. Now we suppose  $\frac{2x}{(x^2+\tau)^2} - \frac{1}{(x+\tau)^2} > 0$ .

In this case we use the well-known inequality  $t-1 \ge \ln t$ ,  $t \in (0,\infty)$ . Putting  $t = \frac{x^2 + \tau}{x + \tau}$  we get  $\ln \frac{x^2 + \tau}{x + \tau} \le \frac{x^2 - x}{x + \tau}$ , for every  $x \in (1,\infty)$ ,  $\tau \in (0,\infty)$ , and it follows that

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{E}(\tau) &= \left(\frac{1}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau}\right) \left(\frac{2x}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau}\right) + \left(\frac{2x}{(x^2 + \tau)^2} - \frac{1}{(x + \tau)^2}\right) \\ &\ln \frac{x^2 + \tau}{x + \tau} \leq \left(\frac{1}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau}\right) \left(\frac{2x}{x^2 + \tau} - \frac{1}{x + \tau}\right) \\ &\quad + \left(\frac{2x}{(x^2 + \tau)^2} - \frac{1}{(x + \tau)^2}\right) \cdot \frac{x^2 - x}{x + \tau} \\ &= \frac{(x - x^2)(x^2 + 2\tau x - \tau)}{(x^2 + \tau)^2(x + \tau)^2} + \frac{[2x(x + \tau)^2 - (x^2 + \tau)^2](x^2 - x)}{(x^2 + \tau)^2(x + \tau)^3} \\ &= \frac{(x - x^2)(x^4 - x^3 + \tau x^2 - \tau x)}{(x^2 + \tau)^2(x + \tau)^3} < 0. \end{split}$$

Consequently, provided that x is fixed,  $x \in (1, \infty)$ , the inequality  $k'(\tau) < 0$  holds for every  $\tau \in (0, \infty)$ . According to (14) it follows  $g'_{\alpha,\beta}(x) > 0$ ,  $x \in (1, \infty)$ , and the proof is finished.

**Theorem 3** If  $\tau = 25$ , then the mapping  $u_{\tau}$  is strictly increasing on the interval  $(0, \infty)$ , where  $u_{\tau}$  is defined by (3).

**Proof.** Provided that  $\tau = 25$ , Lemma 2 implies that the function  $u_{\tau}$  is strictly increasing on the interval  $(0, x_1)$ , where  $x_1$  is the positive root of the equation  $x^2 + 2\tau x - \tau = 0$ .

Let  $x_2 = 1.4616...$  be the positive root of the equation  $\psi(x) = -\frac{1}{x} - \gamma + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{(n+x)n} = 0$ . If  $\tau = 25$ , then Lemma 3 implies that the function

$$\nu:(x_1,\infty)\to\mathbb{R},\ \nu(x)=\frac{-\frac{1}{x}-\gamma+\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty}\frac{x}{(n+x)n}}{\frac{2x}{x^2+\tau}-\frac{1}{x+\tau}},$$

is strictly increasing on the interval  $(x_1, x_2)$ .

Let  $x_3 = 2.2324...$  be the positive root of the equation  $\psi(x) = \psi'(x)$ . Since

Lemma 4 implies that  $\nu$  is strictly increasing on the interval  $(x_2, x_3)$ , it follows that  $\nu$  is strictly increasing on  $(x_1, x_3)$ . Now this result and Lemma 1 imply that the mapping  $u_{\tau}$  is also strictly increasing on the intervals  $(x_1, 1)$  and  $(1, x_3)$ .

Further we will prove that  $u_{\tau}$  is strictly increasing on  $(x_3, 3)$ . We observe that if  $x \in (x_3, 3)$  and  $\tau = 25$  we can multiply the inequalities (6), (7), (8) and it follows that

$$\left(-\frac{1}{x} - \gamma + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{n(n+x)}\right) \ln \frac{x^2 + \tau}{x + \tau} > \frac{x^2 + 2\tau x - \tau}{(x^2 + \tau)(x + \tau)} \ln \Gamma(x),$$
(15)

and consequently we obtain

$$u_{\tau}'(x) = \frac{\left(-\frac{1}{x} - \gamma + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x}{n(n+x)}\right) \ln \frac{x^2 + \tau}{x + \tau} - \frac{x^2 + 2\tau x - \tau}{(x^2 + \tau)(x + \tau)} \ln \Gamma(x)}{\ln^2 \left(\frac{x^2 + \tau}{x + \tau}\right)} > 0, \ x \in (x_3, 3).$$

Summarizing, if  $\tau = 25$ , then we have proved that the function  $u_{\tau}$  is strictly increasing on the intervals  $(0, x_1)$ ,  $(x_1, x_3)$ ,  $(x_3, 3)$ . The continuity of  $u_{\tau}$  implies that  $u_{\tau}$  is strictly increasing on the interval (0, 3).

We will prove in the followings that if  $\tau = 25$ , then  $u_{\tau}$  is strictly increasing on  $(3, \infty)$ .

It is easily seen that multiplying the inequalities (9), (10), and (11) the inequality (15) follows in case  $\tau = 25$  and  $x \in (3, \infty)$ . Thus we have  $u'_{25}(x) > 0$ ,  $x \in (3, \infty)$ , and so  $u_{25}$  is strictly increasing on  $(3, \infty)$ . The continuity of  $u_{25}$  implies that this function is strictly increasing on  $(0, \infty)$ .

*Proof of Theorem 1.:* From the equality

$$\mathfrak{u}_{\tau}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathfrak{u}_{25}(\mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathfrak{g}_{25,\tau}(\mathbf{x}),$$

and from the results of Theorem 2. and Theorem 3. we infer that  $u_{\tau}$  is strictly increasing on the interval  $(0, \infty)$  in case of every given  $\tau \in (0, 25]$ .

Other interesting results regarding the  $\Gamma$  function can be found in [1], [2], [5], [6] and [7].

### References

 H. Alzer, Inequalities for the Gamma Function, *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.*, 128, No 1 (1999), 141–147.

- [2] H. Alzer, N. Batir, Monotonicity properties for the Gamma Function, Appl. Math. Lett., 20, No 7 (2007), 778–781.
- [3] G. D. Anderson, M. K. Vamanamurthy, M. Vuorinen, Inequalities for quasiconformal mappings in spaces, *Pacific J. Math.*, 160 (1993), 1–18.
- [4] G. E. Andrews, R. Askey, R. Roy, Special Functions, Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge, 1999.
- [5] N. Batir, Inequalities for the Gamma Function, Arch. Math., 91 (2008), 554–563.
- [6] F. Qi, Wen-H. Li, Integral representations and properties of some functions involving the logarithmic function, arXiv:1305.4083v2 [math.CA] 11 Aug 2014.
- B. -N. Guo, Y. J. Zhang, F. Qi, Rafinements and sharpening of some double inequality for bounding the gamma function, *J. Inequal. Pure. Appl. Math.*, 9, No. 1, (2008), Art. 17.
- [8] P. Ivdy, A Note on a Gamma Function Inequality, J. of Mathematical Inequalities, 3, No. 2 (2009), 227–236.
- [9] P. A. Kupn, R. Szsz, A sharp inequality concerning the Γ function, Integral Transf. Spec. Funct., 24, No. 6 (2013), 502–508.
- [10] P. A. Kupn, R. Szsz, Monotonicity theorems and inequalities for the gamma function, Math. Ineq. Appl., 17/1 (2014), 149–159.
- [11] P. A. Kupn, R. Szsz, Monotonicity results and a sharp upper bound for the Gamma function, *Integral Transforms Spec. Funct.*, 25, No. 7 (2014), 562–570.
- [12] J.-L. Zhao, F. Qi, B.-N. Guo, A rafinement of a double inequality for the gamma function, *Publicationes Mathematicae Debrecen*, T. 80, 3–4 (2012), 333–343.

Received: October 15, 2017



DOI: 10.1515/ausm-2017-0023

### Extensional quotient coalgebras

Jean-Paul Mavoungou Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Science, University of Yaoundé 1, Cameroon email: jpmavoungou@yahoo.fr

Abstract. Given an endofunctor F of an arbitrary category, any maximal element of the lattice of congruence relations on an F-coalgebra  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$  is called a coatomic congruence relation on  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$ . Besides, a coatomic congruence relation K is said to be factor split if the canonical homomorphism  $\nu : A_K \to A_{\nabla_A}$  splits, where  $\nabla_A$  is the largest congruence relation on  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$ . Assuming that F is a covarietor which preserves regular monos, we prove under suitable assumptions on the underlying category that, every quotient coalgebra can be made extensional by taking the regular quotient of an F-coalgebra with respect to a coatomic and not factor split congruence relation or its largest congruence relation.

### 1 Introduction

The study of coalgebras developed by J.J.M.M. Rutten [15] concerns the particular case of Set-endofunctors. The author develops the theory of universal coalgebras with the assumption that the functors preserve weak pullbacks. This property can see bisimulation equivalences corresponding notions as of congruence relations in universal algebras. In the same context, the largest bisimulation on any coalgebra is again the largest congruence on this coalgebra.

Many theoretical computer science structures, including automata, transition systems, object oriented systems and lazy data types can be modeled with a type functor preserving weak pullbacks. However there are viable examples

Key words and phrases: bisimulation, congruence relation

<sup>2010</sup> Mathematics Subject Classification: 68Q85

of coalgebras (topological spaces, for instance) whose type functors do not obey such a restriction.

Certainly, the major advantage of coalgebras is that the theory can naturally deal with nondeterminism and undefinedness, concepts which are hard, or even impossible, to treat algebraically.

A universal algebra is called simple if it does not have any nontrivial congruence relation. The notion of simple coalgebra is obtained by applying the same definition. In other words, the largest congruence relation on a simple coalgebra is its diagonal. An extensional coalgebra is a coalgebra on which the largest bisimulation is its diagonal. Assuming the type functor preserves weak pullbacks, every extensional coalgebra is simple (see [4]).

A quotient algebra also called a factor algebra, is obtained by partionning the elements of an algebra into equivalence classes given by a congruence relation, that is an equivalence relation compatible with all the operators of the algebra. This is equivalent to consider the quotient of an algebra with respect to a congruence relation. The quotient algebra  $A/\theta$  is simple if and only if  $\theta$  is a maximal congruence on A or  $\theta$  is the largest congruence relation on A (see [3]).

The purpose of this paper is to give a characterization theorem for extensional quotient coalgebras of an endofunctor, given an arbitrary underlying category. To this end, let F denote an endofunctor of an arbitrary category. Any maximal element of the lattice of congruence relations on an F-coalgebra  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$  is called a coatomic congruence relation on  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$ . Besides, a coatomic congruence relation K is said to be factor split if the canonical homomorphism  $\nu : A_K \to A_{\nabla_A}$  splits, where  $\nabla_A$  is the largest congruence relation on  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$ . Suppose that the underlying category is regularly well powered, cocomplete, exact and equipped with epi-(regular mono) factorizations. If more, F is a covarietor which preserves regular monos then, every quotient coalgebra can be made extensional by taking the regular quotient of an F-coalgebra with respect to a coatomic and not factor split congruence relation or its largest congruence relation.

### 2 Basic notions

We recall here some definitions and usual properties for the following sections.

#### 2.1 Factorization systems

They will be often used throughout this paper.

A factorization system (F.S) for a category C consists of a pair  $(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{M})$  of classes of morphisms in C such that:

- FS1.  $\mathcal{E}$  and  $\mathcal{M}$  contain all isomorphisms of  $\mathcal{C}$  and are closed under composition.
- FS2. Every morphism f of C can be factored as  $f = m \circ e$  for some morphisms  $e \in \mathcal{E}$  and  $m \in \mathcal{M}$ .
- FS3. For all commutative squares



with  $e \in \mathcal{E}$  and  $\mathfrak{m} \in \mathcal{M}$ , there is a unique arrow w making both triangles commute.

#### 2.2 Subobjects

Unions of regular subobjects are revisited (for more details, see [2]). Their existence allows one to construct pullbacks.

Recall that a regular mono is a morphism in some category which occurs as the equalizer of some parallel pair of morphisms. The dual concept is that of regular epi.

Let A be an object of a category C. Denote by  $\mathcal{M}_A$  the class of all regular monos of codomain A. Any member  $f: B \to A$  of  $\mathcal{M}_A$  is written (B, f). The relation  $\leq_A$  defined on  $\mathcal{M}_A$  by  $(B, f) \leq_A (C, g)$  iff there is  $h: B \to C$  such that  $f = g \circ h$  is a preorder. This preorder induces an equivalence relation  $\sim_A$ in  $\mathcal{M}_A$ , where  $(B, f) \sim_A (C, g)$  iff  $(B, f) \leq_A (C, g)$  and  $(C, g) \leq_A (B, f)$ . Also, the preorder  $\leq_A$  in  $\mathcal{M}_A$  induces an order, again denoted  $\leq_A$ , in the quotient class  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_A = \mathcal{M}_A / \sim_A$ ; more precisely  $[(B, f)] \leq_A [(C, g)]$  iff  $(B, f) \leq_A (C, g)$ . A member of an equivalence class is called a *regular subobject* of A.

**Definition 1** A category C is said to be regularly well powered, if for each A in C,  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}_A$  is a set.

An equivalence class [(B, f)] will be also denoted by its representative f or simply by the domain B; and in this case one also says that f or B is a regular subobject of A.

**Definition 2** A regular image of a morphism  $f : A \to C$  is a regular mono  $m : B \to C$  through which f factors, which is minimal in the sense that, if f factors through any other regular mono  $B' \to C$ , then B is a regular subobject of B'.

Suppose that C is a regularly well powered category admitting coproducts and epi-(regular mono) factorizations. The regular image of a cospan  $(f_{\alpha} : A_{\alpha} \longrightarrow A)_{\alpha}$  in C is the smallest regular subobject E of A through which each  $f_{\alpha}$  factors; that is, there exists a regular mono  $m : E \rightarrow A$  and an epi sink  $(g_{\alpha} : A_{\alpha} \longrightarrow E)_{\alpha}$  such that  $(f_{\alpha}) = m \circ (g_{\alpha})$ . It is constructed in two steps as follows:

- By the universal property of coproducts, consider the unique morphism  $f: \coprod_{\alpha} A_{\alpha} \to A$  such that  $(f_{\alpha}) = f \circ (\mu_{\alpha})$ , where  $(\mu_{\alpha})_{\alpha}$  is the cospan of structural injections.
- Consider the epi-(regular mono) factorization of  $f: \coprod_{\alpha} A_{\alpha} \xrightarrow{e} E \xrightarrow{m} A$ .

Hence, the collection of morphisms  $(e \circ \mu_{\alpha} : A_{\alpha} \longrightarrow E)_{\alpha}$  is an epi sink given that e is an epimorphism and  $(\mu_{\alpha})_{\alpha}$  is an epi sink. Particularly, the regular image or *union* of a cospan  $(\mathfrak{m}_{\alpha} : S_{\alpha} \longrightarrow A)_{\alpha}$  of regular subobjects in C is their supremum in the ordered set  $(\overline{\mathcal{M}}_{A}, \leq_{A})$ . It will be denoted  $\bigcup_{\alpha \in \lambda} \operatorname{Im}(\mathfrak{m}_{\alpha})$ .

**Definition 3** In a category with binary products, a binary relation from A to B is a regular subobject of  $A \times B$ . This is represented by a regular mono  $m: R \rightarrow A \times B$  or equivalently, by a pair of arrows



with the property that the induced arrow  $\langle r_1, r_2 \rangle$ :  $R \to A \times B$  is a regular mono. Also,  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  form a mono source because  $r_1 = p_1 \circ \langle r_1, r_2 \rangle$  and  $r_2 = p_2 \circ \langle r_1, r_2 \rangle$  with  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  which form a mono source as structural morphisms of the product of A and B. A relation from A to A is called a relation on A.

Binary relations are ordered (as regular subobjects of  $A \times A$ ) and can be composed. The relational composition is defined by applying the standard pullback construction as in the category of sets: given a binary relation R
(represented by  $r_1 : R \to A$  and  $r_2 : R \to B$ ) in a finitely complete category with epi-(regular mono) factorizations, form the pullback of  $r_1$  and  $r_2$ .



Factorize  $\langle \mathbf{r}_1 \circ \mathbf{t}_1, \mathbf{r}_2 \circ \mathbf{t}_2 \rangle$ :  $\mathbb{R} \times_A \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{A} \times \mathbb{A}$  as an epimorphism followed by a regular mono, then the latter represents the composite  $\mathbb{R} \circ \mathbb{R}$ .  $\mathbb{R}$  is said to be *transitive* if  $\mathbb{R} \circ \mathbb{R}$  is smaller than  $\mathbb{R}$ . The relation  $\mathbb{R}$  is called *reflexive* if the diagonal map  $\langle \mathbf{1}_A, \mathbf{1}_A \rangle$ :  $\mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A} \times \mathbb{A}$  factors through it and, *symmetric* if there is an arrow  $\tau : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$  such that  $\mathbf{r}_1 \circ \tau = \mathbf{r}_2$  and  $\mathbf{r}_2 \circ \tau = \mathbf{r}_1$ . We say that  $\mathbb{R}$  is an *equivalence relation* if it is reflexive, symmetric and transitive.

Pullbacks are constructed in the presence of unions of regular subobjects as follows.

**Proposition 1** Suppose that C is a regularly well powered category with coproducts, finite products and admitting epi-(regular mono) factorizations. Then it has pullbacks.

**Proof.** Consider a cospan  $(A \xrightarrow{f_1} C \xleftarrow{f_2} B)$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .



Let us denote by  $\operatorname{Rel}(A, B)$  the class of all binary relations R from A to B such that  $f_1 \circ r_1 = f_2 \circ r_2$ . This class is nonempty as we are going to show. Let 0 be the initial object of C (the coproduct in C over the empty index set). The canonical arrow  $!: 0 \to A \times B$  factorizes through a regular subobject 0' of  $A \times B$ , which is a member of  $\operatorname{Rel}(A, B)$ . Since the category C is regularly well powered, the class  $\operatorname{Rel}(A, B)$  is a set. Let R denote again its supremum (the union); this supremum exists since C has coproducts. Denote by  $u: R \to A \times B$  the regular mono making R a binary relation.

Consider a span  $(Q, (g_i)_{i=1,2})$  such that  $f_1 \circ g_1 = f_2 \circ g_2$ . By the universal property of products, there is a unique arrow  $g : Q \longrightarrow A \times B$  such that

 $p_1 \circ g = g_1$  and  $p_2 \circ g = g_2$ ;  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  being the structural morphisms of the product of A and B. Factorize g as an epimorphism followed by a regular mono:



Then  $(W, (h_i)_{i=1,2})$ , with  $h_i = p_i \circ m_g$ , is a binary relation from A to B such that  $f_1 \circ h_1 = f_2 \circ h_2$ . Hence, there is an arrow  $s: W \to R$  such that  $m_g = u \circ s$ . As a result,  $g_i = p_i \circ g = p_i \circ m_g \circ e_g = p_i \circ u \circ s \circ g = r_i \circ s \circ e_g$  with  $r_i = p_i \circ u$ ; i = 1, 2. This implies that for any arrow  $j: Q \to R$  such that  $r_1 \circ j = g_1$  and  $r_2 \circ j = g_2$ , we have  $r_1 \circ j = r_1 \circ (s \circ e_g)$  and  $r_2 \circ j = r_2 \circ (s \circ e_g)$ . Thereafter  $s \circ e_g = j$  since the pair  $(r_1, r_2)$  is a mono source. Consequently,  $s \circ e_g$  is the unique arrow from Q to R such that  $r_1 \circ (s \circ e_g) = g_1$  and  $r_2 \circ (s \circ e_g) = g_2$ . This proves that R together with arrows  $r_1 = p_1 \circ u$  and  $r_2 = p_2 \circ u$  is the pullback of the cospan  $(A \xrightarrow{f_1} C \xleftarrow{f_2} B)$ .

Under Proposition 1, the category C is finitely complete; this is because it has finite products and pullbacks (see [14]).

#### 2.3 Exact sequences

Set, the category of sets and mappings has *exact sequences*; this means that every equivalence relation is a kernel pair of its coequalizer. In other words, there is a ono-to-one correspondence between equivalence relations and regular quotients.

Replacing Set by a finitely complete category C with coequalizers, an exact sequence in C is a diagram

$$R \xrightarrow[r_2]{r_1} A \xrightarrow[r_2]{e} B$$

where R is the kernel pair of e and e is the coequalizer of the parallel pair  $(r_1, r_2)$ . The category C is said to have exact sequences if every equivalence relation in C is the kernel pair of its coequalizer. Every topos has exact sequences (see [7]).

A category C will be called *regular* if every finite diagram has a limit, if every parallel pair of morphisms has a coequalizer and if regular epis are stable under pullbacks. A regular category with exact sequences is called *exact*.

#### 2.4 Kleisli categories

Only monads on Set will be considered.

A monad on Set consists of a Set-endofunctor T together with

• a unit natural transformation  $\eta : id \Rightarrow T$ ; that is, a function  $\eta_X : X \to TX$  for each set X satisfying a suitable naturality condition; and

• a multiplication natural transformation  $\mu: T^2 \Rightarrow T$ , consisting of functions  $\mu_X: T^2X \to TX$  with X ranging over sets.

The unit and multiplication are required to satisfy the following compatibility conditions.

The powerset functor  $\mathcal{P}$  is a monad with a unit given by singletons and a multiplication given by unions. Every adjunction gives rise to a monad (see [10]).

Given any monad T, its *Kleisli category*  $\mathcal{Kl}(T)$  is defined as follows. Its objects are the objects of the base category, hence sets in our consideration. An arrow  $X \to Y$  in  $\mathcal{Kl}(T)$  is the same thing as an arrow  $X \to TX$ . Identities and composition of arrows are defined using the unit and the multiplication of T. Moreover, there is a canonical adjunction  $J \dashv H$ , where the functor  $J : Set \to \mathcal{Kl}(T)$  carries a mapping  $f : X \to Y$  to  $\eta_Y \circ f : X \to TY$  in  $\mathcal{Kl}(T)$  (see [10]). For instance, the Kleisli category  $\mathcal{Kl}(\mathcal{P})$  of the powerset monad is up to isomorphism the category **Rel** of sets and binary relations (see [5]).

A functor  $F : \mathcal{Kl}(T) \to \mathcal{Kl}(T)$  is said to be a *lifting* of a Set-endofunctor F if the following diagram commutes.



A lifting  $\overline{F}$  of a Set-endofunctor F is in bijective with a *distributive law*  $\lambda$  : FT  $\Rightarrow$  TF (see [12]).

# 3 Coalgebras of an endofunctor

Let F be an endofunctor of a category C. An F-coalgebra or a coalgebra of type F is a pair (A, a) consisting of an object A in C together with a C-morphism

 $a: A \to FA$ . A is called the *carrier* or the *underlying object* and the arrow a the *coalgebra structure* of (A, a).

Given F-coalgebras (A, a) and (B, b), the arrow  $f : A \to B$  in C is called an F-morphism, if the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \stackrel{a}{\longrightarrow} & FA \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow Ff \\ B & \stackrel{b}{\longrightarrow} & FB \end{array}$$

It is straightforward to check that the F-morphisms are stable under composition. We write  $C_F$  the category of F-coalgebras and their homomorphisms.

Throughout all that follows, unless otherwise stated,

- *C* is a regularly well powered category equipped with epi-(regular mono) factorizations and admitting products;
- F denotes an endofunctor of  $\mathcal{C}$ .

#### 3.1 Congruences

**Definition 4** Let (A, a) and (B, b) be F-coalgebras. A binary relation K from A to B is a precongruence if for every cospan  $(A \xrightarrow{i} Z \xleftarrow{j} B)$ ,



A congruence relation is a precongruence which is an equivalence relation.

Consider a Set-endofunctor F that preserves weak pullbacks. There exists a distributive law  $\lambda : F\mathcal{P} \Rightarrow \mathcal{P}F$  given by

$$\lambda_{X}(\mathfrak{u}) = \{ \mathfrak{v} \in \mathsf{FX} : (\mathfrak{v}, \mathfrak{u}) \in \mathsf{Rel}_{\mathsf{F}}(\mathfrak{e}_{X}) \}$$

where  $u \in F\mathcal{P}X$  and  $Rel_F(\epsilon_X) \subseteq FX \times F\mathcal{P}X$  is the F-relation lifting of the membership relation  $\epsilon_X$  (see [5]). The functor  $\overline{F} : \mathbf{Rel} \to \mathbf{Rel}$  induced by this distributive law carries and arrow  $R : X \to Y$  in  $\mathcal{Kl}(\mathcal{P})$  which is a binary relation from X to Y to its F-relation lifting  $Rel_F(R)$ . That is,  $\overline{F}R = Rel_F(R) : FX \to FY$  in  $\mathcal{Kl}(\mathcal{P}) \cong \mathbf{Rel}$ .

Given  $\overline{F}$ -coalgebras  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$  and  $(B, \mathfrak{a})$ . Let  $K : A \to B$  be an  $\overline{F}$ -morphism. The following diagram commutes as  $\overline{F}$  and F coincide on objects.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \stackrel{a}{\longrightarrow} FA \\ \kappa \downarrow & & \downarrow_{\bar{F}K} \\ B & \stackrel{a}{\longrightarrow} FB \end{array}$$

Also, for every cospan  $(A \xrightarrow{i} Z \xleftarrow{j} B)$ , if  $j \circ K = i$  then  $\overline{F}(j) \circ \overline{F}K = \overline{F}(i)$ ; hence  $\overline{F}(j) \circ b \circ K = \overline{F}(j) \circ \overline{F}K \circ a = \overline{F}(i) \circ a$ . This results the commutative diagram



Then K is a precongruence. Consequently, any  $\overline{F}$ -morphism is a precongruence.

**Proposition 2** Assume the category C has colimits. Congruence relations on an F-coalgebra (A, a) form a sup-complete lattice denoted Con(A, a). The supremum is given by

$$\bigvee_{\alpha \in \Lambda} K_{\alpha} = [\cup \{ \operatorname{Im}(\mathfrak{m}_{\alpha} : K_{\alpha} \to A \times A); \alpha \in \Lambda \}]^*$$

the smallest congruence relation greater than the union of all  $\mathfrak{m}_{\alpha}$ .

**Proof.** Let  $(\mathfrak{m}_{\alpha} : \mathsf{K}_{\alpha} \to A \times A)_{\alpha \in \Lambda}$  be a nonempty family of congruences on an F-coalgebra  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$  with projections  $k_{1}^{\alpha}$  and  $k_{2}^{\alpha}$  given  $\alpha \in \Lambda$ . Since the category C is regularly well powered, this family of regular subobjects of  $A \times A$ is a set. Its supremum K exists therefore in C. This is equivalent to consider a regular mono  $\mathfrak{m} : \mathsf{K} \to A \times A$  and an epi sink  $(e_{\alpha})_{\alpha}$  such that  $(\mathfrak{m}_{\alpha}) = \mathfrak{m} \circ (e_{\alpha})$ . Furthermore, the category C has pullbacks under Proposition 1. Given  $(A \xrightarrow{u} B \xleftarrow{\nu} A)$  the pushout of the projections  $k_{1}$  and  $k_{2}$  of K. Denote by  $\mathsf{Pb}(\mathfrak{u},\mathfrak{v})$ the pullback of  $\mathfrak{u}$  and  $\mathfrak{v}$ . There is a unique arrow  $\mathfrak{s} : \mathsf{K} \to \mathsf{Pb}(\mathfrak{u},\mathfrak{v})$  such that  $w_{1} \circ \mathfrak{s} = k_{1}$  and  $w_{2} \circ \mathfrak{s} = k_{2}$ ;  $w_{1}$  and  $w_{2}$  being the structural morphisms of  $\mathsf{Pb}(\mathfrak{u},\mathfrak{v})$ . Consider a cospan  $(A \xrightarrow{i} Z \xleftarrow{j} A)$  such that the following diagram commutes.



Then  $\mathbf{i} \circ \mathbf{k}_1 = \mathbf{i} \circ w_1 \circ \mathbf{s} = \mathbf{j} \circ w_2 \circ \mathbf{s} = \mathbf{j} \circ \mathbf{k}_2$ . By the universal property of pushouts, there is a unique arrow  $w: B \to Z$  such that  $w \circ u = \mathbf{i}$  and  $w \circ v = \mathbf{j}$ . For each  $\alpha \in \Lambda$ ,  $\mathbf{i} \circ \mathbf{k}_1^{\alpha} = \mathbf{j} \circ \mathbf{k}_2^{\alpha}$ ; this follows from the fact that  $\mathbf{k}_1^{\alpha} = \mathbf{k}_1 \circ \mathbf{e}_{\alpha}$  and  $\mathbf{k}_2^{\alpha} = \mathbf{k}_2 \circ \mathbf{e}_{\alpha}$ . Hence  $F(\mathbf{i}) \circ \mathbf{a} \circ \mathbf{k}_1 \circ \mathbf{e}_{\alpha} = F(\mathbf{j}) \circ \mathbf{a} \circ \mathbf{k}_2 \circ \mathbf{e}_{\alpha}$ , because  $K_{\alpha}$  is a precongruence. The equality  $F(\mathbf{i}) \circ \mathbf{a} \circ \mathbf{k}_1 = F(\mathbf{j}) \circ \mathbf{a} \circ \mathbf{k}_2 \circ \mathbf{e}_{\alpha}$ , because  $K_{\alpha}$  is a nepi sink. Particularly, the equality  $F(\mathbf{u}) \circ \mathbf{a} \circ \mathbf{k}_1 = F(v) \circ \mathbf{a} \circ \mathbf{k}_2$  holds. There is therefore a unique arrow  $\mathbf{b}: B \to FB$  turning  $\mathbf{u}$  and v into F-morphisms. So, we have  $F(\mathbf{i}) \circ \mathbf{a} \circ w_1 = F(w) \circ \mathbf{a} \circ w_1 = F(w) \circ \mathbf{b} \circ \mathbf{u} \circ w_1 = F(w) \circ \mathbf{b} \circ \mathbf{u} \circ w_1 = F(w) \circ \mathbf{b} \circ \mathbf{u} \circ w_2 = F(w) \circ F(v) \circ \mathbf{a} \circ w_2 = F(w \circ v) \circ \mathbf{a} \circ w_2 = F(\mathbf{j}) \circ \mathbf{a} \circ w_2$ . This proves that the following diagram commutes.



Thus Pb(u, v) is a precongruence. Besides u = v given that K is reflexive. That is, u is the coequalizer of the two projections  $k_1$  and  $k_2$ . Consequently, Pb(u, v) is an equivalence relation as the kernel pair of a regular mono. Hence Pb(u, v) is a congruence relation on (A, a). It is easy to check that this is in fact the supremum of the family  $(\mathfrak{m}_{\alpha} : K_{\alpha} \to A \times A)_{\alpha \in \Lambda}$ .

The supremum of a family of congruences on an F-coalgebra (A, a) indexed over the empty set is  $\Delta_A = \ker(1_A)$ . It is the smallest congruence on (A, a).  $\Box$ 

Write  $\nabla_A$  to denote the largest congruence relation on (A, a).

**Proposition 3** Suppose that the category C is exact with colimits. For every F-coalgebra (B,b), there is at most one F-morphism  $\varphi : (B,b) \to A_{\nabla_A}$ .

**Proof.** By Proposition 1, the category C has pullbacks. Let us prove that there is at most one F-morphism with codomain  $A_{\nabla_A}$ . Assume there are two different F-morphisms  $\varphi_1, \varphi_2 : (B, b) \to A_{\nabla_A}$ . Let  $\psi : A_{\nabla_A} \to C$  be their coequalizer. Then  $\ker(\psi \circ \pi_{\nabla_A})$  is an equivalence relation on A, where  $\pi_{\nabla_A} : A \to A_{\nabla_A}$  is the coequalizer of  $\nabla_A$ . In addition,  $\ker(\psi \circ \pi_{\nabla_A})$  is a precongruence. Indeed, consider a cospan  $(A \xrightarrow{i} Z \xleftarrow{j} A)$  such that the following diagram commutes;  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  being the projections of  $\ker(\psi \circ \pi_{\nabla_A})$ .



Then  $\mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j}$  given that  $\ker(\psi \circ \pi_{\nabla_A})$  is a reflexive relation on A. Also,  $\psi \circ \pi_{\nabla_A}$  is the coequalizer of  $\ker(\psi \circ \pi_{\nabla_A})$  as the category  $\mathcal{C}$  is regular. By the universal property of coequalizers, there is a unique arrow  $\mathbf{u} : \mathbf{C} \to \mathbf{Z}$  such that  $\mathbf{u} \circ (\psi \circ \pi_{\nabla_A}) = \mathbf{i}$ . Furthermore,  $\pi_{\nabla_A}$  is an F-morphism; this follows from the fact that  $\nabla_A$  is a congruence relation. Hence  $\psi \circ \pi_{\nabla_A}$  is an F-morphism. This implies that  $F(\mathbf{i}) \circ \mathbf{a} \circ \mathbf{t}_1 = F(\mathbf{j}) \circ \mathbf{a} \circ \mathbf{t}_2$ ; that is, the following diagram commutes.



So,  $\ker(\psi \circ \pi_{\nabla_A})$  is a congruence relation on  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$ . Under condition that the category  $\mathcal{C}$  has exact sequences,  $\nabla_A$  is the kernel pair of  $\pi_{\nabla_A}$ . Consequently,  $\nabla_A$  is properly smaller than  $\ker(\psi \circ \pi_{\nabla_A})$  because  $\varphi_1$  and  $\varphi_2$  are different. This contradicts the fact that  $\nabla_A$  is the largest congruence relation on  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$ .  $\Box$ 

Any maximal element of the lattice of congruence relations on (A, a) is called a *coatomic* congruence relation on (A, a).

#### 3.2 Bisimulations

In the coalgebraic context, there are four notions of bisimulation that generalize the standard notion of bisimulation for labelled transition systems (i.e., coalgebras of the **Set**-endofunctor  $\mathcal{P}(L \times (-))$ ), due to Milner [11] and Park [13]. Further, the four notions are related under certain conditions (see [16]). The definition we adopt here is a simplification of the bisimulation of Hermida and Jacobs [6].

**Definition 5** For any relation R from A to B in C, we define the relation  $\overline{FR}$  from FA to FB to be the regular image of the composite morphism  $FR \rightarrow F(A \times B) \rightarrow FA \times FB$ .

A bisimulation between F-coalgebras (A, a) and (B, b) is a binary relation R from A to B such that there is a morphism  $R \to \overline{F}R$  making the following diagram commute.



A bisimulation on (A, a) is a bisimulation between (A, a) and (A, a). Any bisimulation on (A, a) which is an equivalence relation is called a bisimulation equivalence.

**Proposition 4** Suppose that the category C has coproducts and the endofunctor F preserves regular monos. Then the union of any collection of bisimulations is a bisimulation.

**Proof.** Given F-coalgebras  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$  and  $(B, \mathfrak{b})$ . The class  $(R_t)_{t\in T}$  of bisimulations between  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$  and  $(B, \mathfrak{b})$  is nonempty, since the category  $\mathcal{C}$  has coproducts. Also, this class is a set because  $\mathcal{C}$  is regularly well powered. Denote by  $(\coprod_{t\in T} R_t, (\sigma_t)_{t\in T})$  the coproduct of  $R_t$ 's. Each  $R_t$  is a regular subobject of  $A \times B$  represented by a regular mono  $\mathfrak{m}_t : R_t \to A \times B$ . Let  $\mathfrak{u} : \coprod_{t\in T} R_t \to A \times B$  be the unique arrow such that  $\mathfrak{u} \circ \sigma_t = \mathfrak{m}_t$ , for all  $t \in T$ . Denote by  $\overline{F} \coprod_{t\in T} R_t$  the regular image of the composite morphism  $F \coprod_{t\in T} R_t \to F(A \times B) \to FA \times FB$ . The following diagram commutes.



Under condition that the category C has epi-(regular mono) factorizations, there is a unique arrow  $d: \overline{F}R_t \to \overline{F} \coprod_{t \in T} R_t$  making both triangles commute. By the universal property of coproducts, there is a unique arrow  $\rho: \coprod_{t \in T} R_t \to \overline{F} \coprod_{t \in T} R_t$  such that  $\rho \circ \sigma_t = d \circ r_t$ , for all  $t \in T$ .

Factorize **u** as an epimorphism **e** followed by a regular mono  $\mathbf{m} : \mathbf{R} \to \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ . Consider  $\mathbf{m}_1 : \mathbf{R}_1 \to \mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{m}_2 : \mathbf{R}_2 \to \mathbf{B}$  the respective regular images of the morphisms  $\mathbf{p}_1 \circ \mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{p}_2 \circ \mathbf{u}$ ;  $\mathbf{p}_1$  and  $\mathbf{p}_2$  being structural morphisms of the product of  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$ . Then  $(\mathbf{p}_i \circ \mathbf{m}) \circ \mathbf{e} = \mathbf{m}_i \circ \mathbf{e}_i$ ;  $\mathbf{i} = 1, 2$ . Hence, there is a unique arrow  $w_i : \mathbf{R} \to \mathbf{R}_i$  such that  $\mathbf{m}_i \circ w_i = \mathbf{p}_i \circ \mathbf{m}$  and  $w_i \circ \mathbf{e} = \mathbf{e}_i$ . The morphisms  $w_1$  and  $w_2$  induce a unique arrow  $\langle w_1, w_2 \rangle : \mathbf{R} \to \mathbf{R}_1 \times \mathbf{R}_2$  such that  $v_1 \circ \langle w_1, w_2 \rangle = w_1$  and  $v_2 \circ \langle w_1, w_2 \rangle = w_2$ ;  $v_1$  and  $v_2$  being the structural morphisms of the product of  $\mathbf{R}_1$  and  $\mathbf{R}_2$ . Let  $\mathbf{s} : \mathbf{R}_1 \times \mathbf{R}_2 \to \mathbf{F}\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{F}\mathbf{B}$  be the unique arrow such that  $\mathbf{h}_1 \circ \mathbf{s} = \mathbf{a} \circ \mathbf{m}_1 \circ v_1$  and  $\mathbf{h}_2 \circ \mathbf{s} = \mathbf{b} \circ \mathbf{m}_2 \circ v_2$ ;  $\mathbf{h}_1$  and  $\mathbf{h}_2$  being the structural morphisms of the product of  $\mathbf{F}\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{F}\mathbf{B}$ . In addition, consider the unique arrow  $\mathbf{k} : \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}) \to \mathbf{F}\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{F}\mathbf{B}$  such that  $\mathbf{h}_1 \circ \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{F}\mathbf{p}_1$  and  $h_2 \circ k = Fp_2$ . So,  $\bar{u} \circ \bar{v} = k \circ F(u) = k \circ F(m) \circ F(e) = \bar{m} \circ \bar{e} \circ F(e)$ . Because  $\bar{v}$  is an epimorphism and  $\bar{m}$  is a regular mono, there is a unique arrow  $z : \bar{F} \coprod_{t \in T} R_t \to \bar{F}R$  such that  $\bar{m} \circ z = \bar{u}$  and  $z \circ \bar{v} = \bar{e} \circ F(e)$ . Likewise,  $F(m_i) \circ F(e_i) = F(m_i \circ e_i) = F(p_i \circ u) = F(p_i) \circ F(u) = h_i \circ k \circ F(u) = h_i \circ \bar{u} \circ \bar{v};$ i = 1, 2. Since the endofunctor F preserves regular monos, there is a unique arrow  $c_i : \bar{F} \coprod_{t \in T} R_t \to FR_i$  such that  $F(m_i) \circ c_i = h_i \circ \bar{u}$  and  $c_i \circ \bar{v} = F(e_i);$ i = 1, 2. It follows that for all  $t \in T$ ,  $F(m_1) \circ c_1 \circ \rho \circ \sigma_t = h_1 \circ \bar{u} \circ \rho \circ \sigma_t = h_1 \circ \bar{u} \circ \rho \circ \sigma_t = h_1 \circ \bar{m}_t \circ r_t = a \circ p_1 \circ m_t = a \circ p_1 \circ u \circ \sigma_t$  and  $F(m_2) \circ c_2 \circ \rho \circ \sigma_t = h_2 \circ \bar{u} \circ \rho \circ \sigma_t = h_2 \circ \bar{u} \circ d \circ r_t = h_2 \circ \bar{m}_t \circ r_t = b \circ p_2 \circ m_t = b \circ p_2 \circ u \circ \sigma_t$ . Whence  $F(m_1) \circ c_1 \circ \rho = a \circ m_1 \circ e_1$  and  $F(m_2) \circ c_2 \circ \rho = b \circ m_2 \circ e_2$  as the cospan  $(\sigma_t)_{t \in T}$  is an epi sink.

These equalities are used to establish the following commutative diagram.



Indeed, we have  $h_1 \circ s \circ \langle w_1, w_2 \rangle \circ e = a \circ m_1 \circ v_1 \circ \langle w_1, w_2 \rangle \circ e = a \circ m_1 \circ w_1 \circ e = a \circ m_1 \circ e_1 = F(m_1) \circ c_1 \circ \rho = h_1 \circ \bar{u} \circ \rho = h_1 \circ \bar{m} \circ z \circ \rho$  and  $h_2 \circ s \circ \langle w_1, w_2 \rangle \circ e = b \circ m_2 \circ v_2 \circ \langle w_1, w_2 \rangle \circ e = b \circ m_2 \circ w_2 \circ e = b \circ m_2 \circ e_2 = F(m_2) \circ c_2 \circ \rho = h_2 \circ \bar{u} \circ \rho = h_2 \circ \bar{m} \circ z \circ \rho$ . Since the pair  $(h_1, h_2)$  is a mono source, the equality  $s \circ \langle w_1, w_2 \rangle \circ e = \bar{m} \circ z \circ \rho$  holds. Consequently, there is a unique arrow  $r : R \to \bar{F}R$  making both triangles commute. Furthermore, we have that  $(h_1 \circ \bar{m}) \circ r = h_1 \circ s \circ \langle w_1, w_2 \rangle = a \circ m_1 \circ v_1 \circ \langle w_1, w_2 \rangle = a \circ m_1 \circ w_1 = a \circ (p_1 \circ m)$  and  $(h_2 \circ \bar{m}) \circ r = h_2 \circ s \circ \langle w_1, w_2 \rangle = b \circ m_2 \circ v_2 \circ \langle w_1, w_2 \rangle = b \circ m_2 \circ w_2 = b \circ (p_2 \circ m)$ . Subsequently, R is a bisimulation as union of a collection of bisimulations.

Any bisimulation equivalence is a congruence relation (see [16]). But the converse is not true (see [1]). Now, we are going to investigate the relationship between bisimulations and congruences.

The following fact is a generalization of the H. P. Gumm's result presented in [4].

**Proposition 5** Assume the category C has colimits and exact sequences. For every bisimulation R on an F-coalgebra (A, a) there is a smallest congruence relation  $\langle R \rangle$  greater than R provided that R is reflexive.

**Proof.** According to Proposition 1, the category C has pullbacks. Consider a bisimulation  $(R, (r_i)_{i=1,2})$  on an F-coalgebra (A, a). Let  $(A \xrightarrow{u} B \xleftarrow{\nu} A)$  be the pushout of  $r_1$  and  $r_2$ . Denote by Pb(u, v) the pullback of u and v. Then Pb(u, v) is a precongruence. Indeed, given a cospan  $(A \xrightarrow{i} Z \xleftarrow{j} A)$  such that the following diagram commutes;  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  being the projections of Pb(u, v).



By the universal property of pullbacks, there is a unique arrow  $s: R \to Pb(u, v)$ such that  $t_1 \circ s = r_1$  and  $t_2 \circ s = r_2$ . This implies that  $i \circ r_1 = j \circ r_2$ . Hence there is a unique arrow  $w: B \to Z$  such that  $w \circ u = i$  and  $w \circ v = j$ . In addition,  $F(u) \circ a \circ r_1 = F(v) \circ a \circ r_2$  due to R is a precongruence as bisimulation (see [16]). Thus B is equipped with a coalgebra structure turning u and v into F-morphisms. For this reason, the equality  $F(i) \circ a \circ t_1 = F(j) \circ a \circ t_2$  holds; that is, the following diagram commutes.



Also, Pb(u, v) is an equivalence relation on A because R is a reflexive bisimulation. Finally, Pb(u, v) is a congruence relation on (A, a) which is greater than R. Since the category C satisfies the exactness property, it is not hard to see that Pb(u, v) is the smallest congruence relation with this property.  $\Box$ 

Denote by  $\mathbf{R}$ -Bis(A, a) the ordered set of reflexive bisimulations on (A, a). The Proposition 5 yields a functorial correspondence

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Diamond_{(A,\mathfrak{a})}: & \mathbf{R}\text{-}\mathbf{Bis}(A,\mathfrak{a}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Con}(A,\mathfrak{a}) \\ & & R & \longmapsto & \langle R \rangle \end{array}$$

Otherwise, every congruence relation K on (A, a) is a reflexive relation on A as equivalence relation. Then the diagonal map  $\langle 1_A, 1_A \rangle : A \to A \times A$  factors through K. But the diagonal map is a split mono and therefore a regular mono. Also, A is equipped with a bisimulation structure that comes from its coalgebra structure by epi-(regular mono) factorization of the composite

morphism  $FA \to F(A \times A) \to FA \times FA$ . Hence A is a bisimulation on  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$  smaller than K. If more, the endofunctor F preserves regular monos, there exists under Proposition 4, a largest bisimulation on  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$  smaller than K, that we denote  $\Box_{(A,\mathfrak{a})}K$ . Since A is a bisimulation on  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$  smaller than K, the diagonal map factors through  $\Box_{(A,\mathfrak{a})}K$ . So  $\Box_{(A,\mathfrak{a})}K$  is a reflexive bisimulation on  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$ . This defines a correspondence

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \Box_{(A, \mathfrak{a})} : & \mathbf{Con}(A, \mathfrak{a}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{R}\text{-}\mathbf{Bis}(A, \mathfrak{a}) \\ & \mathsf{K} & \longmapsto & \Box_{(A, \mathfrak{a})}\mathsf{K} \end{array}$$

which extends to a functor.

Given a reflexive bisimulation R and a congruence relation K on (A, a), the following are equivalent:

- (i)  $\langle R \rangle$  is a regular subobject of K.
- (ii) R is a regular subobject of  $\Box_{(A,a)}K$ .

Hence, assuming that F preserves regular monos, the functor  $\Diamond_{(A,a)}$  is the left adjoint of the functor  $\Box_{(A,a)}$ .

**Definition 6** An endofunctor  $F : C \to C$  is called a covarietor, provided that the forgetful functor  $U_F : C_F \to C$  has a right adjoint.

Given a topos  $\mathcal{E}$  with a *natural number object* (see [7]). The endofunctor  $M : \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{E}$  that assigns to each object A in  $\mathcal{E}$ , the *free monoid* generated by A is a covarietor (see [8]).

The largest bisimulation on (A, a) which is denoted  $\sim_A$  is a reflexive bisimulation.

**Proposition 6** Assume the category C has colimits with exact sequences and the endofunctor F is a covarietor which preserves regular monos. A nontrivial congruence relation K on (A, a) is coatomic or  $K = \nabla_A$ , provided that  $\Box_{(A,a)}K = \sim_A$ .

**Proof.** Let K be a nontrivial congruence relation on (A, a), different from  $\nabla_A$  and satisfying the condition  $\Box_{(A,a)} K = \sim_A$ . Suppose that there is a congruence relation L on (A, a), greater than K and different from  $\nabla_A$ . By the universal property of coequalizers, there is a unique factorization  $r : A_K \to A_L$  such that  $\pi_L = r \circ \pi_K$ , where  $\pi_K$  and  $\pi_L$  are respectively the coequalizers of K and L. Under

Proposition 1, the category C has pullbacks. Then the category  $C_F$  has also pullbacks, since the endofunctor F is a covarietor which preserves regular monos (see [9]). Since the category C has exact sequences, every equivalence relation in C is the kernel pair of its coequalizer. Furthermore, the coequalizer of any congruence relation is an F-morphism. Thereafter, the canonical arrow from the kernel pair of  $\pi_K$  in  $C_F$  to  $A \times A$  factored through the largest bisimulation on  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$  smaller than K. Likewise, the canonical arrow from the kernel pair of  $\pi_L$  in  $\mathcal{C}_F$  to  $A \times A$  factored through the largest bisimulation on  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$  smaller than K. Likewise, the canonical arrow from the kernel pair of  $\pi_L$  is a regular subobject of  $\Box_{(A,\mathfrak{a})}K$ , given that  $\Box_{(A,\mathfrak{a})}K = \sim_A$ . As a consequence, there is a unique arrow  $\mathfrak{s} : A_L \to A_K$  such that  $\pi_K = \mathfrak{s} \circ \pi_L$ . Then we get  $\pi_K = (\mathfrak{s} \circ \mathfrak{r}) \circ \pi_K$ ; whence  $\mathfrak{s} \circ \mathfrak{r} = \mathbf{1}_{A_K}$  since  $\pi_K$  is an epi. Thus  $\mathfrak{r}$  is an epi from the fact of the equality  $\pi_L = \mathfrak{r} \circ \pi_K$ , and a section; that is an iso. Hence K is coatomic.

On the other hand,  $\sim_A$  is the largest bisimulation on  $(A, \mathfrak{a})$  smaller than  $\nabla_A$ .

In general though  $\langle \sim_A \rangle$  does not need to be the largest congruence on (A, a). For illustration, denote by  $()_2^3 : Set \to Set$  the functor defined on objects as follows: for a set,

$$A_2^3 = \{(a_1, a_2, a_3) \in A^3 / | \{a_1, a_2, a_3\} | \le 2\}$$

and for each mapping  $f: A \longrightarrow B$ ,

$$f_2^3(a_1,a_2,a_3)=(f(a_1),f(a_2),f(a_3))$$

Consider the  $()_2^3$ -coalgebra (A, a) with  $A = \{0, 1, 2\}$ , a(0) = (0, 0, 2), a(1) = (1, 1, 2) and a(2) = (1, 2, 2). Since the singleton  $\{0\}$  can be provided with a  $()_2^3$ -coalgebra structure, the unique mapping  $!_A : A \to \{0\}$  is a  $()_2^3$ -morphism. Its kernel pair is  $A \times A$  and it is not a bisimulation on (A, a). This implies that  $A \times A$  is the largest congruence on (A, a). However the largest bisimulation on (A, a) is the diagonal  $\Delta_A$ . It is easy to check that  $\langle \sim_A \rangle = \Delta_A$ . Remark that  $K = \{(0,0), (1,1), (2,2), (0,1), (1,0)\}$  is a coatomic congruence relation on (A, a).

#### 4 Simple and extensional coalgebras

The largest bisimulation on a final coalgebra is its diagonal. Coalgebras which are not final but satisfy this condition are called extensional. They are said to satisfy the weaker condition of simplicity. **Definition 7** An F-coalgebra (S, s) is extensional, if  $\Delta_S$  is the largest bisimulation on (S, s).

The definition of extensionality reformulates the coinduction proof principle:

$$\frac{x \sim x'}{x = x'}$$

This means, in order to prove that two elements x and y are equal it is enough to prove that there exists a bisimulation R under which x is related to y; i.e.,  $(x, y) \in R$ .

A coalgebra is called *simple* if it does not have any nontrivial congruence relation. Obviously every simple coalgebra is extensional, but the converse holds whenever the endofunctor preserves weak pullbacks.

**Proposition 7** For any F-coalgebra (S, s) the following are equivalent:

- (i) (S, s) is extensional.
- (ii) For every F-coalgebra (A, a), there is at most one F-morphism  $\psi : (A, a) \rightarrow (S, s)$ .

**Proof.** (i)  $\Longrightarrow$  (ii). Suppose that there are two different F-morphisms  $\varphi_1, \varphi_2$ : (A, a)  $\rightarrow$  (S, s). There is a unique arrow  $\varphi : A \rightarrow S \times S$  such that  $p_1 \circ \varphi = \varphi_1$ and  $p_2 \circ \varphi = \varphi_2$ , with  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  the structural morphisms of the product of S with itself. The arrow  $\varphi$  factorizes through a regular subobject R of  $S \times S$ which is a nontrivial bisimulation on (S, s).

 $(\mathfrak{i}\mathfrak{i}) \Longrightarrow (\mathfrak{i})$ . Suppose that  $\Delta_S$  is not the largest bisimulation on  $(S, \mathfrak{s})$ . There is a bisimulation  $(\mathbb{R}, (\mathfrak{r}_i)_{i=1,2})$  on  $(S, \mathfrak{s})$  with  $\mathfrak{r}_1 \neq \mathfrak{r}_2$ .

Recall the set  $A = \{0, 1, 2\}$  together with the coalgebra structure  $a : A \to A_2^3$ such that a(0) = (0, 0, 2), a(1) = (1, 1, 2) and a(2) = (1, 2, 2), where  $K = \{(0, 0), (1, 1), (2, 2), (0, 1), (1, 0)\}$  is a coatomic congruence relation on (A, a). In particular,  $K \neq \nabla_A = A \times A$ , but the  $()_2^3$ -coalgebra on the quotient set  $A_K = \{\overline{0}, \overline{2}\}$  is extensional; this is because the largest bisimulation on  $A_K$  is the diagonal  $\Delta_{A_K}$  (see [4]).

**Definition 8** A coatomic congruence relation K on (S, s) is called factor split if the canonical homomorphism  $\nu : S_K \to S_{\nabla s}$  splits.

 $H = \{(0,0), (1,1), (2,2), (1,2), (2,1)\}$  is an equivalence relation on the set  $A = \{0, 1, 2\}$ . Let  $\pi_H$  denote the canonical projection of A onto  $A_H = \{\bar{0}, \bar{1}\}$ , the

quotient set with respect to H. Provide A with the  $()_2^3$ -coalgebra structure **a** such that  $\mathbf{a}(0) = (0, 0, 2)$ ,  $\mathbf{a}(1) = (1, 1, 2)$  and  $\mathbf{a}(2) = (1, 2, 2)$ . Then  $\pi_H$  is a  $()_2^3$ -morphism given that  $A_H$  is equipped with the coalgebra structure  $\mathbf{a}_H : A_H \to (A_H)_2^3$  defined as  $\mathbf{a}_H(\bar{0}) = (\bar{0}, \bar{0}, \bar{1})$  and  $\mathbf{a}_H(\bar{1}) = (\bar{1}, \bar{1}, \bar{1})$ . Consequently, H is a congruence relation on  $(A, \mathbf{a})$ . Also, H is coatomic as a maximal element of the lattice of congruence relations on  $(A, \mathbf{a})$ . Since  $\mathbf{a}_H(\bar{1}) = (\bar{1}, \bar{1}, \bar{1})$ , the canonical homomorphism  $\mathbf{v} : A_H \to A_{\nabla_A} = \{0\}$  has a right-sided inverse. Hence, H is factor split.

For any coatomic and factor split congruence relation K on (S, s), denote by  $\tau: S_{\nabla_S} \to S_K$  the right-sided inverse of the canonical homomorphism  $\nu: S_K \to S_{\nabla_S}$ . Then  $\tau \circ \nu: S_K \to S_K$  and  $1_{S_K}: S_K \to S_K$  are two different F-morphisms with codomain  $S_K$ . As a result,  $S_K$  is not extensional due to Proposition 7.

**Lemma 1** Suppose that the category C is exact with colimits. For any coatomic congruence relation K on an F-coalgebra (S, s), the quotient coalgebra  $S_K$  is extensional provided that K is not factor split.

**Proof.** Given K a coatomic and not factor split congruence relation on (S, s). Suppose that the quotient coalgebra  $S_K$  is not extensional. Then the largest bisimulation on  $S_{K}$  is nontrivial. By Proposition 3, the canonical homomorphism  $\nu$  from  $S_K$  to  $S_{\nabla S}$  coequalizes its projections. Let  $\phi:S_K\to C$  denote the coequalizer of the projections of  $\sim_{S_{\kappa}}$ , the largest bisimulation on (S, s). There is a unique arrow  $t: C \to S_{\nabla_S}$  such that  $t \circ \varphi = \nu$ . Hence,  $ker(\varphi)$  is properly smaller than  $ker(\nu)$ . Also, K is properly smaller than  $ker(\phi \circ \pi_K)$  and  $\ker(\pi_{\nabla_{S_{\kappa}}} \circ \pi_{K}); \pi_{K} \text{ and } \pi_{\nabla_{S_{\kappa}}} \text{ being respectively the coequalizer of the projec$ tions of  $\hat{K}$  and the coequalizer of the projections of  $\nabla_{S_K}$ , the largest congruence relation on  $S_K$ . But,  $ker(\phi \circ \pi_K)$  and  $ker(\pi_{\nabla S_K} \circ \pi_K)$  are congruence relations on (S, s). Consequently,  $ker(\phi \circ \pi_K) = \nabla_A = \mathring{ker}(\pi_{\nabla_{S_K}} \circ \pi_K)$  as K is coatomic. Besides,  $\phi \circ \pi_K$  and  $\pi_{\nabla_{S_K}} \circ \pi_K$  are regular epis given that the category  $\mathcal{C}$  is regular. This implies that  $\varphi \circ \pi_K = \pi_{\nabla_{S_K}} \circ \pi_K$ ; that is,  $\varphi = \pi_{\nabla_{S_K}}$  due to  $\pi_K$ is an epi. Then  $\ker(\varphi) = \nabla_{S_{\kappa}}$  because the category  $\mathcal{C}$  has exact sequences. It follows that  $\nabla_{S_{\kappa}}$  is properly smaller than  $ker(\nu)$  which is a congruence relation on  $S_{K}$ . This is a contradiction. So,  $S_{K}$  is extensional. 

A quotient coalgebra can be made extensional by taking a regular quotient with respect to a coatomic and not factor split congruence relation or its largest congruence relation as the following states.

**Proposition 8** Assume the category C is exact with colimits and the endofunctor F is a covarietor which preserves regular monos. For every F-coalgebra (S, s) and a congruence relation K on (S, s), the quotient coalgebra  $S_K$  is extensional if and only if K is coatomic and not factor split or  $K = \nabla_S$ .

**Proof.** Suppose that  $S_K$  is extensional. Let  $(Q, (q_i)_{i=1,2})$  be a bisimulation on (S, s). There is a unique arrow  $m : Q \to S \times S$  such that  $p_1 \circ m = q_1$  and  $p_2 \circ m = q_2$ ;  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  being the structural morphisms of the product of S with itself. Let  $\pi_K$  denote the coequalizer of K. The universal property of products yields a unique arrow  $m_K : Q \to S_K \times S_K$  such that  $\overline{p}_1 \circ m_K = \pi_K \circ p_1 \circ m$  and  $\overline{p}_2 \circ m_K = \pi_K \circ p_2 \circ m$ , with  $\overline{p}_1$  and  $\overline{p}_2$  the structural morphisms of the product of  $S_K$  with itself. The arrow  $m_K$  admits the epi-(regular mono) factorization



Let  $r_K : S \times S \to S_K \times S_K$  be the unique arrow such that  $\overline{p}_1 \circ r_K = \pi_K \circ p_1$  and  $\overline{p}_2 \circ r_K = \pi_K \circ p_2$ . Then  $F(v_K) \circ F(u) = F(r_K) \circ F(m)$  due to  $v_K \circ u = r_K \circ m$ . Hence  $h \circ F(v_K) \circ F(u) = h \circ F(r_K) \circ F(m)$ , where  $h : F(S_K \times S_K) \to FS_K \times FS_K$  is the unique arrow such that  $\overline{t}_1 \circ h = F(\overline{p}_1)$  and  $\overline{t}_2 \circ h = F(\overline{p}_2)$ ;  $\overline{t}_1$  and  $\overline{t}_2$  being the structural morphisms of the product of  $FS_K$  with itself. Furthermore, there is a unique arrow  $\pi : FS \times FS \to FS_K \times FS_K$  such that  $\overline{t}_1 \circ \pi = F(\pi_K) \circ t_1$  and  $\overline{t}_2 \circ \pi = F(\pi_K) \circ t_2$ , with  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  the structural morphisms of the product of FS with itself. Given  $k : F(S \times S) \to FS \times FS$  the unique arrow such that  $t_1 \circ k = F(p_1)$  and  $t_2 \circ k = F(p_2)$ , we have that  $\overline{t}_i \circ \pi \circ k = F(\pi_K) \circ t_i \circ k = F(\pi_K) \circ F(p_i) = F(\overline{p}_i) \circ F(r_K) = \overline{t}_i \circ h \circ F(r_K)$ ; i = 1, 2. The equality  $\pi \circ k = h \circ F(r_K)$  arises from the fact that the pair  $(\overline{t}_1, \overline{t}_2)$  is a mono source. One deduces the following commutative diagram.



By the axiom FS3, there is a unique arrow  $w: \overline{F}Q \to \overline{F}R$  making both triangles commute. In addition, there is a unique arrow  $z: S_K \times S_K \to FS_K \times FS_K$  such that  $\overline{t}_1 \circ z = s_K \circ \overline{p}_1$  and  $\overline{t}_2 \circ z = s_K \circ \overline{p}_2$ , where  $s_K: S_K \to FS_K$  is the unique arrow turning  $\pi_K$  into an F-morphism. Denote by  $q: Q \to \overline{F}Q$  the arrow such

that  $s \circ p_1 \circ m = t_1 \circ \overline{m} \circ q$  and  $s \circ p_2 \circ m = t_2 \circ \overline{m} \circ q$ . For i = 1, 2; the following holds:

$$\begin{split} \overline{t}_i \circ z \circ v_K \circ u &= s_K \circ \overline{p}_i \circ v_K \circ u \\ &= s_K \circ \overline{p}_i \circ r_K \circ m \\ &= s_K \circ \pi_K \circ p_i \circ m \\ &= F(\pi_K) \circ s \circ p_i \circ m \\ &= F(\pi_K) \circ t_i \circ \overline{m} \circ q \\ &= \overline{t}_i \circ \pi \circ \overline{m} \circ q \\ &= \overline{t}_i \circ \overline{v}_K \circ w \circ q \end{split}$$

Hence,  $z \circ v_K \circ u = \bar{v}_K \circ w \circ q$  because the pair  $(\bar{t}_1, \bar{t}_2)$  is a mono source. Since u is an epimorphism and  $\bar{v}_K$  a regular mono, there is a unique arrow  $r: R \to \bar{F}R$  such that  $\bar{v}_K \circ r = z \circ v_K$  and  $r \circ u = w \circ q$ . In fact, R is a bisimulation on  $S_K$ . Thus R is a regular subobject of  $\Delta_{S_K}$  which is the largest bisimulation on  $S_K$ . This implies that  $\pi_K \circ p_1 \circ m = \pi_K \circ p_2 \circ m$ . Consequently Q is a regular subobject of K. Since Q is a bisimulation on (S, s), it is smaller than  $\Box_{(S,s)}K$ . Whence  $\Box_{(S,s)}K$  is the largest bisimulation on (S, s). The Proposition 6 allows to conclude.

Conversely  $S_K$  is extensional arising from Propositions 3, 7 and Lemma 1.

# References

- P. Aczel, N. Mendler, A final coalgebra theorem, Proceedings category theory and Computer Science (D. H. Pitt et al, ed.), *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, **389** (1989), 357–365.
- [2] J. Adamek, H. Herrlich, G. E. Strecker, Abstract and concrete categories, Wiley-Interscience, 1990.
- [3] S. Burris, H. P. Sankappanavar, A course in universal algebra, Graduate Texts in Mathematics, vol. 78, Springer, New York, 1981.
- [4] H. P. Gumm, *Elements of the general theory of coalgebras*, LUATCS 99, Rand Afrikaans University, Johanesbourg, South Africa, 1999.
- [5] I. Hasuo, B. Jacobs, A. Sokolova, Generic trace semantics via coinduction, Logical Methods in Computer Science, 3 (2007), 1–36.
- [6] C. Hermida, B. Jacobs, Structural induction and coinduction in a fibrational setting, *Information and Computation*, 145 (1998), 107–152.

- [7] P. T. Johnstone, Topos Theory, Academy press, London, 1977.
- [8] P. Johnstone, J. Power, T. Tsujishita, H. Watanabe, J. Worrell, On the structure of categories of coalgebras, *Theoretical Computer Science*, 260 (2001), 87–117.
- [9] A. Kurz, *Limits in categories of coalgebras*, Draft, November 16, 1999.
- [10] S. Mac Lane, Categories for the working mathematician, Graduate Texts in Mathematics, vol. 5, Springer Verlag, 1971.
- [11] R. Milner, Communication and Concurrency, Prentice Hall, 1989.
- [12] P. S. Mulry, Lifting theorems for Kleisli categories, Mathematical Foundations of Programming Semantics (MFPS IX), Lecture Notes in Computer Science, 802 (1994), 304–319.
- [13] D. Park, Concurrency and automata on infinite sequences, Proceedings of Theoretical Computer Science: 5th GI Conference, *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, **104** (1981), 167–183.
- [14] N. Popescu, L. Popescu, *Theory of categories*, Editura Academiei Bucuresti, Romania, 1979.
- [15] J. J. M. M. Rutten, Universal coalgebra: a theory of systems, *Theoretical Computer Science*, 249 (2000), 3–80.
- [16] S. Staton, Relating coalgebraic notions of bisimulation, Logical Methods in Computer Science, 7 (2011), 1–21.

Received: August 1, 2015

ACTA UNIV. SAPIENTIAE, MATHEMATICA, 9, 2 (2017) 324-335

DOI: 10.1515/ausm-2017-0024

# Sesquilinear version of numerical range and numerical radius

#### Hamid Reza Moradi

DE GRUYTER

Young Researchers and Elite Club, Mashhad Branch, Islamic Azad University, Mashhad, Iran email: hrmoradi@mshdiau.ac.ir

Silvestru Sever Dragomir Mathematics, College of Engineering and Science, Victoria University, Australia email: sever.dragomir@vu.edu.au Mohsen Erfanian Omidvar

Department of Mathematics, Mashhad Branch, Islamic Azad University, Iran email: math.erfanian@gmail.com

#### Mohammad Saeed Khan

Department of Mathematics & Statistics, Sultan Qaboos University, Oman email: mohammad@squ.edu.om

**Abstract.** In this paper by using the notion of sesquilinear form we introduce a new class of numerical range and numerical radius in normed space  $\mathscr{V}$ , also its various characterizations are given. We apply our results to get some inequalities.

# 1 Introduction and preliminaries

A related concept to our work is the notion of sesquilinear form. Sesquilinear forms and quadratic forms were studied extensively by various authors, who have developed a rich array of tools to study them; cf. [17, 19]. There is a considerable amount of literature devoting to the study of sesquilinear form. We refer to [1, 9, 22] for a recent survey and references therein.

**<sup>2010</sup>** Mathematics Subject Classification: 15A63, 15A03, 47A12, 47A30, 47A63, 47C10 Key words and phrases: sesquilinear form, numerical range, numerical radius, norm inequality

During the past decades, several definitions of the numerical range in various settings have been introduced by many mathematicians. For instance, Marcus and Wang [15] opened the concept of the rth permanent numerical range of operator A. Furthermore, Descloux in [3] defined the notion of the essential numerical range of an operator with respect to a coercive sesquilinear form. In 1977, Marvin [16] and in 1984, independently, Tsing [23] introduce and characterize a new version of numerical range in a space  $\mathbb{C}^n$  equipped with a sesquilinear form. Li in [14], generalized the work of Tsing and explored fundamental properties and consequences of numerical range in the framework sesquilinear form. We also refer to another interesting paper by Fox [10] of this type.

The motivation of this paper is to introduce the notions of numerical range and numerical radius without the inner product structure. In fact, the result extends immediately to the case where the Hilbert space  $\mathscr{H}$  and inner product  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ , replaced by vector space  $\mathscr{V}$  and sesquilinear form  $\varphi$ , respectively. For the sake of completeness, we reproduce the following definitions and preliminary results, which will be needed in the sequel.

A functional  $\varphi : \mathscr{V} \times \mathscr{V} \to \mathbb{C}$  where  $\mathscr{V}$  is complex vector space, is a sesquilinear form if satisfying the following two conditions:

- (a)  $\varphi(\alpha x_1 + \beta x_2, y) = \alpha \varphi(x_1, y) + \beta \varphi(x_2, y),$
- (b)  $\varphi(x, \alpha y_1 + \beta y_2) = \overline{\alpha} \varphi(x, y_1) + \overline{\beta} \varphi(x, y_2),$

for any scalars  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  and any  $x, x_1, x_2, y, y_1, y_2 \in \mathscr{V}$ .

We now recall that, two typical examples of sesquilinear forms are as follows:

- (I) Let A and B be operators on an inner product space  $\mathscr{V}$ . Then  $\varphi_1(x, y) = \langle Ax, y \rangle$ ,  $\varphi_2(x, y) = \langle x, By \rangle$ , and  $\varphi_3(x, y) = \langle Ax, By \rangle$  are sesquilinear forms on  $\mathscr{V}$ .
- (II) Let f and g be two linear functionals on a vector space  $\mathscr{V}$ . Then  $\varphi(x, y) = f(x)\overline{g(y)}$  is a sesquilinear form on  $\mathscr{V}$ .

A sesquilinear form  $\varphi$  on vector space  $\mathscr{V}$  is called *symmetric* if  $\varphi(x, y) = \overline{\varphi(y, x)}$ , for all  $x, y \in \mathscr{V}$ . We say a sesquilinear form  $\varphi$  on vector space  $\mathscr{V}$  is *positive* if  $\varphi(x, x) \ge 0$ , for all  $x \in \mathscr{V}$ . If  $\mathscr{V}$  is a normed space, then  $\varphi$  is called *bounded* if  $|\varphi(x, y)| \le M ||x|| ||y||$ , for some M > 0 and all  $x, y \in \mathscr{V}$ .

It is worth to mention here that for a bounded sesquilinear form  $\phi$  on  $\mathscr V$  we have

$$\left| \phi \left( x,y \right) \right| \leq \left\| \phi \right\| \left\| x \right\| \left\| y \right\|,$$

for all  $x, y \in \mathscr{V}$ .

For each positive sesquilinear form  $\varphi$  on vector space  $\mathscr{V}$ ,  $\sqrt{\varphi(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x})}$  is a semi norm; since satisfied the axioms of a norm except that the implication  $\sqrt{\varphi(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x})} = 0 \Rightarrow \mathbf{x} = 0$  may not hold; see [18, p. 52]. We notice that the norm of  $\mathscr{V}$ , will be denoted by  $\|\cdot\|_{\varphi}$ .

The operator A on the space  $(\mathscr{V}, \|\cdot\|_{\varphi})$  is called *bounded* (in short  $A \in \mathcal{B}(\mathscr{V})$ ) if

$$\|Ax\|_{\varphi} \leq M \|x\|_{\varphi}$$

for every  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{V}$ . The operator A in  $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{V})$  is called  $\phi$ -adjointable if there exist  $B \in \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{V})$  such that

$$\varphi(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x},\mathbf{y}) \leq \varphi(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{B}\mathbf{y})$$

for every  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in \mathcal{V}$ . In this case, B is  $\varphi$ -adjoint of A and it is denoted by A<sup>\*</sup>. If  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A}^*$ , then A is called *self-adjoint* (for more information on related ideas and concepts we refer the reader to [21, p. 88-90]). Also, an operator A in  $\mathcal{B}(\mathcal{V})$  is called  $\varphi$ -positive if it is self-adjoint and  $\varphi(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}) \geq 0$  for all  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{V}$ . The set of all  $\varphi$ -adjointable operators will denote by  $\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{V})$ .

In Section 2 we invoke some fundamental facts about the sesquilinear forms in vector space that are used throughout the paper. Some famous inequalities due to Kittaneh, Dragomir and Sándor are given. In Section 3 of this paper, we introduce and study the numerical range and numerical radius by using sesquilinear form  $\varphi$  in normed space  $\mathscr{V}$ , which we call them  $\varphi$ -numerical range and  $\varphi$ -numerical radius, respectively. Also some inequalities for  $\varphi$ -numerical radius are extended. For this purpose, we employ some classical inequalities for numerical radius in Hilbert space.

#### 2 Some immediate results

We start our work by presenting some simple results. The following lemma is known as Polarization identity for sesquilinear forms; see [2, Theorem 4.3.7].

**Lemma 1** Let  $\varphi$  be a sesquilinear form on  $\mathscr{V}$ , then

$$4\varphi(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{y}) = \|\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}\|_{\varphi}^{2} - \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\|_{\varphi}^{2} + \mathbf{i} \|\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{i}\mathbf{y}\|_{\varphi}^{2} - \mathbf{i} \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{i}\mathbf{y}\|_{\varphi}^{2}.$$
 (1)

The next lemma is known as the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality and follows from Lemma 1.

**Lemma 2** For any positive sesquilinear form  $\varphi$  on  $\mathscr{V}$  we have

$$\left| \phi\left( x,y
ight) 
ight| \leq\sqrt{\phi\left( x,x
ight) \sqrt{\phi\left( y,y
ight) }}.$$

**Lemma 3** The Schwarz inequality for  $\varphi$ -positive operators asserts that if A is a  $\varphi$ -positive operator in  $\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{V})$ , then

$$\left|\phi\left(Ax,y\right)\right|^{2} \leq \phi\left(Ax,x\right)\phi\left(Ay,y\right),\tag{2}$$

for all x, y in  $\mathscr{V}$ .

The following lemma can be found in [13, Lemma 1].

$$|\varphi(\mathbf{C}\mathbf{x},\mathbf{y})|^2 \le \varphi(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x},\mathbf{x})\,\varphi(\mathbf{B}\mathbf{y},\mathbf{y})\,,\tag{3}$$

for all x, y in  $\mathscr{V}$ .

**Proof.** First assume that  $\begin{bmatrix} A & C^* \\ C & B \end{bmatrix}$  is a  $\varphi$ -positive operator in  $\mathcal{L}(\mathscr{V} \oplus \mathscr{V})$ . Then by (2) we have

$$\left|\varphi\left(\begin{bmatrix}A & C^*\\ C & B\end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix}x\\ 0\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}0\\ y\end{bmatrix}\right)\right|^2 \le \varphi\left(\begin{bmatrix}A & C^*\\ C & B\end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix}x\\ 0\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}x\\ 0\end{bmatrix}\right)\varphi\left(\begin{bmatrix}A & C^*\\ C & B\end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix}0\\ y\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}0\\ y\end{bmatrix}\right),$$

for all x, y in  $\mathscr{V}$ . A direct simplification of above inequality now yields (3). Conversely, assume that (2) holds, then for every x, y in  $\mathscr{V}$ ,

$$\begin{split} \varphi \left( \begin{bmatrix} A & C^* \\ C & B \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} \right) &= \varphi \left( Ax, x \right) + \varphi \left( C^*y, x \right) + \varphi \left( Cx, y \right) + \varphi \left( By, y \right) \\ &= \varphi \left( Ax, x \right) + \varphi \left( By, y \right) + 2 \operatorname{Re} \varphi \left( Cx, y \right) \\ &\geq 2(\varphi \left( Ax, x \right))^{\frac{1}{2}} (\varphi \left( By, y \right))^{\frac{1}{2}} + 2 \operatorname{Re} \varphi \left( Cx, y \right) \\ &\geq 2 \left| \varphi \left( Cx, y \right) \right| + 2 \operatorname{Re} \varphi \left( Cx, y \right) \\ &\geq 2 \left| \varphi \left( Cx, y \right) \right| - 2 \left| \varphi \left( Cx, y \right) \right| \\ &= 0 \end{split}$$

This completes the proof of the theorem.

**Remark 1** If we put C = AB in (3), then we obtain

$$|\varphi(ABx,x)|^2 \le \varphi(A^2x,x)\varphi(B^2y,y).$$

We will need the following definition to obtain our results. For more related details see [4, p. 1-5].

**Definition 1** A functional  $(\cdot, \cdot) : \mathscr{V} \times \mathscr{V} \to \mathbb{C}$  is said to be a Hermitian form on linear space  $\mathscr{V}$ , if

- (a) (ax + by, z) = a(x, z) + b(y, z), for all  $a, b \in \mathbb{C}$  and all  $x, y, z \in \mathscr{V}$ ;
- $(b) \ (x,y)=\overline{(y,x)}, \, {\rm for \ all} \ x,y\in \mathscr{V}.$

Utilizing the Cauchy Schwarz inequality we can state the following result that will be useful in the sequel (see [7, Theorem 2]).

**Lemma 4** Let  $(\mathscr{V}, \varphi(\cdot, \cdot))$  be a complex vector space, then

$$\begin{pmatrix} \left\| \mathbf{a} \right\|_{\varphi}^{2} \left\| \mathbf{b} \right\|_{\varphi}^{2} - \left| \boldsymbol{\varphi} \left( \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b} \right) \right|^{2} \end{pmatrix} \left( \left\| \mathbf{b} \right\|_{\varphi}^{2} \left\| \mathbf{c} \right\|_{\varphi}^{2} - \left| \boldsymbol{\varphi} \left( \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c} \right) \right|^{2} \right) \\ \geq \left| \boldsymbol{\varphi} \left( \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{c} \right) \left\| \mathbf{b} \right\|_{\varphi}^{2} - \boldsymbol{\varphi} \left( \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b} \right) \boldsymbol{\varphi} \left( \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c} \right) \right|^{2}.$$

$$(4)$$

 $\square$ 

**Proof.** Let us consider the mapping  $p_b : \mathscr{V} \times \mathscr{V} \to \mathbb{C}$ , with  $p_b(a,c) = \phi(a,c) \|b\|_{\phi}^2 - \phi(a,b) \phi(b,c)$ , for each  $b \in \mathscr{V} \setminus \{0\}$ . Obviously  $p_b(\cdot, \cdot)$  is a non-negative Hermitian form and then writing Schwarz's inequality

$$\left|p_{b}\left(a,c\right)\right|^{2}\leq p_{b}\left(a,a\right)p_{b}\left(c,c
ight),\ \left(a,c\in\mathscr{V}
ight)$$

we obtain the desired inequality (4).

The following refinement of the Schwarz inequality holds (see [8, Theorem 4]):

**Theorem 1** Let  $a, b \in \mathscr{V}$  and  $e \in \mathscr{V}$  with  $\|e\|_{\varphi} = 1$ , then

$$\|a\|_{\varphi}\|b\|_{\varphi} \ge |\varphi(a,b)\varphi(a,e)\varphi(e,b)| + |\varphi(a,e)\varphi(e,b)| \ge |\varphi(a,b)|.$$
 (5)

**Proof.** Applying the inequality (4), we can state that

$$\left(\left\|a\right\|_{\varphi}^{2}-\left|\varphi\left(a,e\right)\right|^{2}\right)\left(\left\|b\right\|_{\varphi}^{2}-\left|\varphi\left(b,e\right)\right|^{2}\right)\geq\left|\varphi\left(a,b\right)-\varphi\left(a,e\right)\phi\left(e,b\right)\right|^{2}.$$
(6)

Utilizing the elementary inequality for real numbers

$$\left(\mathfrak{m}^2-\mathfrak{n}^2\right)\left(\mathfrak{p}^2-\mathfrak{q}^2\right)\leq (\mathfrak{m}\mathfrak{p}-\mathfrak{n}\mathfrak{q})^2,$$

we can easily see that

$$\left(\left\|a\right\|_{\varphi}\left\|b\right\|_{\varphi}-\left|\phi\left(a,e\right)\phi\left(e,b\right)\right|\right)^{2} \geq \left(\left\|a\right\|_{\varphi}^{2}-\left|\phi\left(a,e\right)\right|^{2}\right)\left(\left|\left\|b\right\|_{\varphi}^{2}-\left|\phi\left(b,e\right)\right|^{2}\right|\right),\tag{7}$$

for any  $a, b, e \in \mathcal{V}$  with  $\|e\|_{\omega} = 1$ . Since, by the Schwarz's inequality

$$|\varphi(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{e}) \varphi(\mathbf{e}, \mathbf{b})| \leq \|\mathbf{a}\|_{\varphi} \|\mathbf{b}\|_{\varphi}.$$

Hence, by (6) and (7) we deduce the first part of (5). The second part of (5) is obvious.  $\Box$ 

If  $\varphi(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = 0$ ,  $\mathbf{x}$  is said to be  $\varphi$ -orthogonal to  $\mathbf{y}$ , and notation  $\mathbf{x} \perp^{\varphi} \mathbf{y}$  is used. If  $\varphi(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}) = 0$  implies  $\mathbf{x} = 0$ , then the relation  $\perp^{\varphi}$  is symmetric. The notation  $\mathscr{U} \perp^{\varphi} \mathscr{W}$  means that  $\mathbf{x} \perp^{\varphi} \mathbf{y}$  when  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathscr{U}$  and  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathscr{W}$ . Also  $\mathscr{U}^{\perp}$  is the set of all  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathscr{V}$  that are orthogonal to every  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathscr{U}$ . The following lemmas are known in the literature (see [21, p. 307-308]).

**Lemma 5** If  $x, y \in \mathcal{V}$ , and  $\varphi(x, x) = 0$  implies x = 0, then

$$\|\mathbf{y}\|_{\boldsymbol{\omega}} \leq \|\lambda \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{y}\|_{\boldsymbol{\omega}} \ (\lambda \in \mathbb{C}),$$

if and and only if  $x \perp^{\phi} y$ .

**Lemma 6** Every non empty closed convex set  $\mathscr{U} \subset \mathscr{V}$  contains a unique x of minimal norm.

The next assertion is interesting on its own right.

**Theorem 2** If  $\mathscr{M}$  is a closed subspace of  $\mathscr{V}$ , then

$$\mathscr{V}=\mathscr{M}\oplus \mathscr{M}^{\perp}.$$

# 3 $\varphi$ -numerical range and $\varphi$ -numerical radius

This section deals with the theory of sesquilinear forms, its generalizations and applications to numerical range and numerical radius of operators. The basic notions of numerical range and numerical radius can be found in [11]. Moreover, for a host of numerical radius inequalities, and for diverse applications of these inequalities, we refer to [6, 5, 20], and references therein. Before stating the results, we establish the notation some results from the literature.

**Definition 2** The  $\varphi$ -numerical range of an operator A on vector space  $\mathscr{V}$  is the subset of the complex numbers  $\mathbb{C}$ , given by

$$W_{\varphi}(\mathbf{A}) = \{\varphi(\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}) : \mathbf{x} \in \mathscr{V}, \|\mathbf{x}\|_{\omega} = 1\}.$$

**Proposition 2** The following properties of  $W_{\phi}(A)$  are immediate.

- (a) If  $\varphi$  is symmetric then,  $W_{\varphi}(A^*) = \{\overline{\lambda} : \lambda \in W_{\varphi}(A)\}.$
- (b)  $W_{\varphi}(\alpha I + \beta A) = \alpha + \beta W_{\varphi}(A).$
- (c)  $W_{\phi}(U^*AU) = W_{\phi}(A)$ , for any unitary operator U.

Further, we list some basic properties of  $W_{\varphi}(A)$ :

**Proposition 3** Let  $A \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{V})$ ,  $\phi$  be a sesquinear form on vector space  $\mathcal{V}$ , then

(a)  $W_{\varphi}(A)$  is convex.

(b)  $\operatorname{Sp}(A) \subseteq \overline{W_{\varphi}(A)}$ , where  $\operatorname{Sp}(A)$  denotes the spectrum of A.

(c) If  $\phi$  is symmetric then, A is real if and only if  $W_{\phi}(A)$  is real.

**Definition 3** The  $\varphi$ -numerical radius of an operator A on  $\mathscr{V}$  given by

$$\omega_{\varphi}(A) = \sup \{ |\varphi(Ax, x)| : \|x\|_{\varphi} = 1 \}.$$

Note that, if  $\varphi(x, x) = 0$  implies x = 0 then  $\omega_{\varphi}(\cdot)$  is a norm on the  $\mathcal{L}(\mathscr{V})$  of all bounded linear operators  $A : \mathscr{V} \to \mathscr{V}$ , that is

- (a)  $\omega_{\varphi}(A) \ge 0$  for any  $A \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{V})$  and  $\omega_{\varphi}(A) = 0$  if and only if A = 0;
- (b)  $\omega_{\varphi}(\lambda A) = |\lambda| \omega_{\varphi}(A)$  for any  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  and  $A \in \mathcal{L}(\mathscr{V})$ ;
- (c)  $\omega_{\phi}(A+B) \leq \omega_{\phi}(A) + \omega_{\phi}(B)$  for any  $A, B \in \mathcal{L}(\mathscr{V})$ .

This norm is equivalent with the operator norm. In fact, the following more precise result holds:

#### **Proposition 4** For each $A \in \mathcal{L}(\mathscr{V})$

$$\omega_{\varphi}\left(A\right) \le \left\|A\right\|_{\varphi} \le 2\omega_{\varphi}\left(A\right),\tag{8}$$

where

$$\|A\|_{\varphi} = \sup\{|\varphi(Ax, y)|: \|x\|_{\varphi} = \|y\|_{\varphi} = 1\}.$$

We are now ready to construct our main results of this section.

**Theorem 3** Let  $\varphi$  be a symmetric sesquilinear form. Then A is self-adjoint if and only if  $W_{\varphi}(A)$  is real.

**Proof.** If A is self-adjoint, we have, for all  $f \in \mathcal{V}$ ,  $\varphi(Af, f) = \varphi(f, Af) = \overline{\varphi(Af, f)}$ , and hence  $W_{\varphi}(A)$  is real. Conversely, if  $\varphi(Af, f)$  is real for all  $f \in \mathcal{V}$ , we have  $\varphi(Af, f) = \varphi(f, Af) = 0 = \varphi((A - A^*)f, f)$ . Thus the operator  $A - A^*$  has only  $\{0\}$  in its  $\varphi$ -numerical range. So  $A - A^* = 0$  and  $A = A^*$ .  $\Box$ 

**Theorem 4** Let  $A \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{V})$ . If  $R(A) \perp^{\varphi} R(A^*)$ , then  $\omega_{\varphi}(A) = \frac{1}{2} \|A\|_{\varphi}$ .

**Proof.** Let  $x \in \mathcal{V}$ ,  $||x||_{\varphi} = 1$ . We can write  $x = x_1 + x_2$ , where  $x_1 \in N(A)$ , the null space of A, and  $x_2 \in \overline{R(A^*)}$ . Thus we have

$$\varphi(Ax, x) = \varphi(A(x_1 + x_2), x_1 + x_2) = \varphi(Ax_2, x_1).$$

Since  $Ax_1 = 0$  and  $\phi(Ax_2, x_2) = \phi(x_2, A^*x_2) = 0$ . Thus

$$\begin{split} \phi(Ax,x) &| \leq \|A\|_{\phi} \, \|x_1\| \, \|x_2\| \leq \frac{1}{2} \|A\|_{\phi} \left(\|x_1\| + \|x_2\|\right) \\ & (\text{by the inequality } \|a\| \, \|b\| \leq \frac{1}{2} \left(\|a\|^2 + \|b\|^2\right)) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \|A\|_{\phi} \quad (\text{since } \|x_1\| + \|x_2\| = 1). \end{split}$$

Since  $\mathbf{x}$  is arbitrary, we have

$$\omega_{\phi}\left(A\right) \leq \frac{1}{2} {\left\|A\right\|}_{\phi} \leq \omega_{\phi}\left(A\right).$$

This completes the proof.

Our  $\varphi$ -numerical radius inequality for bounded operators can be stated as follows.

**Theorem 5** Let  $A, X \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{V})$ , then

$$\omega_{\varphi}\left(\mathsf{AXA}^{*}\right) \leq \|\mathsf{A}\|_{\varphi}^{2} \,\omega_{\varphi}\left(\mathsf{X}\right). \tag{9}$$

**Proof.** Let  $x \in \mathscr{V}$  be a unit vector. Then

$$\begin{split} |\varphi (AXA^*x, x)| &= |\varphi (XA^*x, A^*x)| \\ &\leq \|A^*x\|_{\varphi}^2 \, \omega_{\varphi} (x) \\ &\leq \|A^*\|_{\varphi}^2 \, \omega_{\varphi} (x) \\ &= \|A\|_{\omega}^2 \, \omega_{\varphi} (x) \, . \end{split}$$

Now the result follows immediately by taking supremum over all unit vectors in  $\mathscr{V}$ .

**Remark 2** Let  $A, X \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{V})$ , then

$$\omega_{\varphi}\left(\mathsf{AXA}^{*}\right) \leq \left\|\mathsf{A}\right\|_{\varphi}^{2} \left\|\mathsf{X}\right\|_{\varphi}.$$
(10)

Note that, by (8) we can easily see that inequality (9) is sharper than inequality (10).

The following result holds (see [12, Theorem 1], for the case of inner product):

**Theorem 6** Let  $A, B \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{V})$  and  $\phi$  is a bounded sesquilinear form, then

$$\frac{1}{4} \|A^*A + AA^*\|_{\varphi} \le (\omega_{\varphi}(A))^2 \le \|A^*A + AA^*\|_{\varphi}.$$

**Proof.** Let A = B + iC be the Cartesian decomposition of A. Then B and C are self-adjoint, and  $A^*A + AA^* = 2(B^2 + C^2)$ . Let x be any vector in  $\mathcal{V}$ . Then by the convexity of the function  $f(t) = t^2$ , we have

$$\begin{split} |\phi (Ax, x)|^2 &= (\phi (Bx, x))^2 + (\phi (Cx, x))^2 \\ &\geq \frac{1}{2} (|\phi (Bx, x)| + |\phi (Cx, x)|)^2 \\ &\geq \frac{1}{2} |\phi ((B \pm C) x, x)|^2. \end{split}$$

Taking supremum over  $x \in \mathscr{V}$  with  $\|x\|_{\varphi} = 1$ , produces

$$\frac{1}{2} \left\| B \pm C \right\|_{\varphi}^{2} \leq (\omega_{\varphi} \left( A \right))^{2}.$$

Since

$$\begin{split} 2(\omega_{\varphi}(A))^{2} &\geq \frac{1}{2} \left( \|B+C\|_{\varphi}^{2} + \|B-C\|_{\varphi}^{2} \right) \\ &\geq \frac{1}{2} \left\| (B+C)^{2} + (B-C)^{2} \right\|_{\varphi} \\ &= \left\| B^{2} + C^{2} \right\|_{\varphi} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \|A^{*}A + AA^{*}\|_{\varphi}, \end{split}$$

and hence

$$(\omega_{\varphi}(A))^{2} \leq \frac{1}{4} \|A^{*}A + AA^{*}\|_{\varphi}.$$

On the other hand

$$|\varphi (Ax, x)|^{2} = (\varphi (Bx, x))^{2} + (\varphi (Cx, x))^{2} \le 2 \left\| B^{2} + C^{2} \right\|_{\varphi}.$$

Now by taking the supremum over  $x \in \mathcal{V}$ , with  $||x||_{\varphi} = 1$  in the above inequality we infer that Theorem 6.

Now we state, another related  $\varphi$ -numerical radius inequality that has been given in [6, Theorem 36], for Hilbert space case.

**Theorem 7** Let  $A \in \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{V})$ , then

$$\omega_{\varphi}^{2}\left(A\right) \leq \frac{1}{2} \left(\omega_{\varphi}\left(A^{2}\right) + \|A\|_{\varphi}^{2}\right).$$
(11)

**Proof.** By Theorem 1 observing that

 $\left| \phi \left( a,b \right) - \phi \left( a,e \right) \phi \left( e,b \right) \right| \geq \left| \phi \left( a,e \right) \phi \left( e,b \right) \right| - \left| \phi \left( a,b \right) \right|,$ 

hence by first inequality in (5) we deduce

$$\frac{1}{2} \left( \left\| \mathbf{a} \right\|_{\varphi} \left\| \mathbf{b} \right\|_{\varphi} + \left| \varphi \left( \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b} \right) \right| \right) \ge \left| \varphi \left( \mathbf{a}, e \right) \varphi \left( e, \mathbf{b} \right) \right|.$$
(12)

Choose in (12), e = x,  $\|x\|_{\varphi} = 1$ , a = Ax and  $b = A^*x$  to get

$$\frac{1}{2} \|Ax\|_{\varphi} \|A^*x\|_{\varphi} + \left|\varphi\left(A^2x, x\right)\right| \ge |\varphi\left(Ax, x\right)|^2, \tag{13}$$

for any  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{V}$  with  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_{\varphi} = 1$ . Taking the supremum in (13) over  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathcal{V}$  with  $\|\mathbf{x}\|_{\varphi} = 1$ , we deduce the desired inequality (11).

**Remark 3** The concept of a sesquilinear form and quadratic form do not require the structure of an inner product space. They can be defined in any vector space. Something to notice about the definition of a sesquilinear form is the similarity it has with an inner product. In essence, a sesquilinear form is a generalization of an inner product. (Note that the inner product is a sesquilinear form but the converse is not true.)

With regard to the point mentioned above, we can say that all of the inequalities which are obtained by Dragomir in [6] can be extended to vector space in a similar way. The details are left to the interested readers.

# Acknowledgment

The authors would like to express our gratitude to the referee for the helpful comments.

# References

- P. J. Cameron, J. J. Seedel, Quadratic forms over GF(2). Indag. Math., 35 (1973), 1–8.
- [2] L. Debnath, P. Mikusinski, *Hilbert spaces with applications*, Third Edition. Elsevier Academic Press, 2005.
- [3] J. Descloux, Essential numerical range of an operator with respect to a coercive form and the approximation of its spectrum by the Galerkin method, SIAM J. Numer. Anal., 18(6) (1981), 1128–1133.
- [4] S. S. Dragomir, Advances in inequalities of the Schwarz, Triangle and Heisenberg type in inner product spaces, Nova Publishers, 2007.
- [5] S. S. Dragomir, A functional associated with two bounded linear operators in Hilbert spaces and related inequalities, *Ital. J. Math.*, **27** (2010), 225– 240.
- [6] S. S. Dragomir, Inequalities for the numerical radius of linear operators in Hilbert spaces, Springer, 2013.
- S. S. Dragomir, J. Sándor, Some inequalities in prehilbertian spaces, Stud. Univ. Babeş-Bolyai Math., 32(1) (1987), 71–78.
- [8] S. S. Dragomir, Some refinements of Schwarz inequality, in: Simposional de Math Si Appl Polytechnical Inst Timisoara, vol. 12, Romania, 1985, pp. 13–16.
- [9] S. S. Dragomir, Some vector inequalities for two operators in Hilbert spaces with applications, Acta Univ. Sapientiae, Math., 8(1) (2016), 75– 92.
- [10] D. W. Fox, The convexity of the range of three Hermitian forms and of the numerical range of sesquilinear forms, *Linear Algebra Appl.*, **22** (1978), 191–194.
- [11] K. E. Gustafsun, D. K. M. Rao, Numerical Range, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1997.
- [12] F. Kittaneh, Numerical radius inequalities for Hilbert space operators, Studia Math., 168(1) (2005), 73–80.

- [13] F. Kittaneh, Notes on some inequalities for Hilbert space operators, Publ. Res. Inst. Math. Sci., 24(2) (1988), 283–293.
- [14] C. K. Li, P. P. Mehta, L. Rodman, A generalized numerical range: the range of a constrained sesquilinear form, *Linear Multilinear Algebra.*, 37(1-3) (1994), 25–49.
- [15] M. Marcus, B. Y. Wang, Some variations on the numerical range, *Linear Multilinear Algebra.*, 9(2) (1980), 111–120.
- [16] M. Marvin, P. Andresen, Constrained extrema of bilinear functionals, Monatsh. Math., 84(3) (1977), 219–235.
- [17] C. Mehl, L. Rodman, Symmetric matrices with respect to sesquilinear forms, *Linear Algebra Appl.*, **349**(1) (2002), 55–75.
- [18] J. G. Murphy, Operator theory and C\*-algebras, Academic Press, San Diego, 1990.
- [19] O. T. O'Meara, Introduction to quadratic forms, Vol. 117. Springer, 2013.
- [20] M. E. Omidvar, M. S. Moslehian, A. Niknam, Some numerical radius inequalities for Hilbert space operators, *Involve.*, 2(4) (2009), 471–478.
- [21] W. Rudin, *Functional analysis*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1973.
- [22] A. N. Sherstnev, O. E. Tikhonov, On characterization of integrable sesquilinear forms, *Math. Slovaca.*, 62(6) (2012), 1167–1172.
- [23] N. K. Tsing, The constrained bilinear form and the C-numerical range, Linear Algebra Appl., 56 (1984), 195–206.

Received: December 8, 2016

DOI: 10.1515/ausm-2017-0025

# Fibonacci words in hyperbolic Pascal triangles

László Németh Institute of Mathematics, University of Sopron, Hungary email: nemeth.laszlo@uni-sopron.hu

**Abstract.** The hyperbolic Pascal triangle  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,q}$  ( $q \geq 5$ ) is a new mathematical construction, which is a geometrical generalization of Pascal's arithmetical triangle. In the present study we show that a natural pattern of rows of  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,5}$  is almost the same as the sequence consisting of every second term of the well-known Fibonacci words. Further, we give a generalization of the Fibonacci words using the hyperbolic Pascal triangles. The geometrical properties of a  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,q}$  imply a graph structure between the finite Fibonacci words.

# 1 Introduction

The hyperbolic Pascal triangle  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,q}$   $(q \geq 5)$  is a new mathematical construction, which is a geometrical generalization of Pascal's arithmetical triangle [1]. In the present article we discuss the properties of the patterns of the rows of  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,q}$ , which patterns give a new kind of generalizations of the well-known Fibonacci words. Our aim is to show the connection between the Fibonacci words and the hyperbolic Pascal triangles.

After a short introduction of the hyperbolic Pascal triangles and the finite Fibonacci words we define a new family of Fibonacci words and we present the relations between the hyperbolic Pascal triangles and the newly generalized Fibonacci words. Their connections will be illustrated by figures for better

<sup>2010</sup> Mathematics Subject Classification: 05B30, 11B39

Key words and phrases: hyperbolic Pascal triangle, Fibonacci word

comprehension. As the hyperbolic Pascal triangles are based on the hyperbolic regular lattices, their geometrical properties provide a graph structure between the generalized finite Fibonacci words. The extension of this connection could provide a new family of binary words.

#### 1.1 Hyperbolic Pascal triangles

In the hyperbolic plane there are infinite types of regular mosaics (or regular lattices), that are denoted by the Schläfli symbol  $\{p, q\}$ , where (p-2)(q-2) > 4. Each regular mosaic induces a so-called hyperbolic Pascal triangle, following and generalizing the connection between classical Pascal's triangle and the Euclidean regular square mosaic  $\{4, 4\}$  (for more details see [1, 5, 6]).

The hyperbolic Pascal triangle  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,q}$  based on the mosaic  $\{p,q\}$  can be depicted as a digraph, where the vertices and the edges are the vertices and the edges of a well-defined part of the lattice  $\{p,q\}$ , respectively. Further, the vertices possess a value each giving the number of the different shortest paths from the base vertex. Figure 1 illustrates the hyperbolic Pascal triangle when  $\{p,q\} = \{4,6\}$ . Generally, for a  $\{4,q\}$  configuration the base vertex has two edges, the leftmost and the rightmost vertices have three, the others have q edges. The square shaped cells surrounded by appropriate edges correspond to the regular squares in the mosaic. Apart from the winger elements, certain vertices (called "Type A" for convenience) have two ascendants and q-2 descendants, the others ("Type B") have one ascendant and q-1 descendants. In the figures of the present study we denote the type A vertices by red circles and the type B vertices by cyan diamonds, while the wingers by white diamonds. The vertices which are n-edge-long far from the base vertex are in row n.



Figure 1: Hyperbolic Pascal triangle linked to  $\{4, 6\}$  up to row 5

The general method of deriving the triangle is the following: going along the vertices of the j<sup>th</sup> row, according to the type of the elements (winger, A, B), we draw the appropriate number of edges downwards (2, q - 2, q - 1, respectively). Neighbour edges of two neighbour vertices of the j<sup>th</sup> row meet in the (j + 1)<sup>th</sup> row, constructing a type A vertex. The other descendants of row j are type B in row j + 1. Figure 2 also shows a growing algorithm of the different types except the leftmost items, that are always types B and A. (Compare Figure 2 with Figures 1 and 3.)

In the sequel,  $\binom{n}{k}$  denotes the k<sup>th</sup> element in row n, whose value is either the sum of the values of its two ascendants or the value of its unique ascendant. We note, that the hyperbolic Pascal triangle has the property of vertical symmetry.

In the following we generalize the Fibonacci word in a new (but not brand new) way and show that this generalization is the same as the patterns of nodes types A and B in rows of  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,q}$ .



Figure 2: Growing method in Pascal triangles (except for the two leftmost items)

#### 1.2 Fibonacci words

The most familiar and the most studied binary word in mathematics is the Fibonacci word. The finite Fibonacci words,  $f_i$ , are defined by the elements of the recurrence sequence  $\{f_i\}_{i=0}^\infty$  over  $\{0,1\}$  defined as follows

$$f_0 = 1, \qquad f_1 = 0, \qquad f_i = f_{i-1}f_{i-2}, \qquad (i \ge 2).$$

It is clear, that  $|f_i| = F_{i+1}$ , where  $F_i$  is the i-th Fibonacci number defined by the recurrence relation  $F_i = F_{i-1} + F_{i-2}$   $(i \ge 2)$ , with initial values  $F_0 = 0$ ,  $F_1 = 1$ . The infinite Fibonacci word is  $\mathbf{f} = \lim_{i\to\infty} f_i$ . Table 1 shows the first few Fibonacci words. It is also well-known that the Fibonacci morphism ( $\sigma$ :  $\{0, 1\} \rightarrow \{0, 1\}$ \*,  $0 \rightarrow 01$ ,  $1 \rightarrow 0$ ) acts between two consecutive finite Fibonacci words. For some newest properties (and further references) of Fibonacci words see [2, 3, 4, 7, 8].

$$\begin{array}{rclrcl} f_0 &=& 1 \\ f_1 &=& 0 \\ f_2 &=& 01 \\ f_3 &=& 010 \\ f_4 &=& 01001 \\ f_5 &=& 01001010 \\ f_6 &=& 0100101001001 \\ f_7 &=& 0100101001001001001001 \\ \end{array}$$

Table 1: The first Fibonacci words

# 2 {4, q}-Fibonacci words

There are some generalizations of Fibonacci words, one of them is the biperiodic Fibonacci word [2, 8]. For any two positive integers a and b, the biperiodic finite Fibonacci words sequence, say  $\{\widehat{f}_i\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$ , is defined recursively by

$$\widehat{f}_0 = 1, \ \widehat{f}_1 = 0, \ \widehat{f}_2 = 0^{\alpha-1}1 = 00 \dots 01,$$

and

$$\widehat{f}_i = \begin{cases} \widehat{f}_{i-1}^{\alpha} \widehat{f}_{i-2}, & \text{if $i$ is even;} \\ \widehat{f}_{i-1}^{b} \widehat{f}_{i-2}, & \text{if $i$ is odd;} \end{cases} \quad (i \geq 3).$$

It has been proved [8], that if  $i \ge 1$  then  $|\hat{f_i}| = F_i^{(a,b)}$ , where for any two positive integers a and b, the biperiodic Fibonacci sequence  $\{F_i^{(a,b)}\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$  is defined recursively by

$$F_{0}^{(a,b)} = 0, \ F_{1}^{(a,b)} = 1, \ F_{i}^{(a,b)} = \begin{cases} aF_{i-1}^{(a,b)} + F_{i-2}^{(a,b)}, & \text{if $i$ is even;} \\ bF_{i-1}^{(a,b)} + F_{i-2}^{(a,b)}, & \text{if $i$ is odd;} \end{cases} \quad (i \ge 2).$$
(1)

The first few terms are  $0, 1, a, ab+1, a^2b+2a, a^2b^2+3ab+1, a^3b^2+4a^2b+3a, a^3b^3+5a^2b^2+6ab+1$ . When a = b = k, this generalization gives the k-Fibonacci numbers and in the case a = b = 1, we recover the original Fibonacci numbers [2, 8].

Now let us define the finite  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words sequence  $\{f_i^{[4,q]}\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$ , shortly  $\{f_i^{[q]}\}_{i=0}^{\infty}$ , where  $q \ge 5$ , a new family of generalized Fibonacci words, and

$$f_{0}^{[q]} = 1, \ f_{1}^{[q]} = 0, \ f_{i}^{[q]} = \begin{cases} \left(f_{i-1}^{[q]}\right)^{q-4} f_{i-2}^{[q]}, & \text{if i is even;} \\ f_{i-1}^{[q]} f_{i-2}^{[q]}, & \text{if i is odd;} \end{cases} \quad (i \ge 2).$$

These new  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words are almost the same as the biperiodic Pascal words,  $\hat{f}_i$ , if a = 1 and b = q - 4. As the definitions for the second items vary, the odd and even situations are reversing. If q = 5, then  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words coincide with the classical Fibonacci words. (In Table 2 we list the first few  $\{4, 6\}$ -Fibonacci words.) The infinite  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci word is defined as  $f^{[q]} = \lim_{i \to \infty} f_i^{[q]}$  and  $f = f^{[5]}$  (see Table 3).

Table 2: The first few  $\{4, 6\}$ -Fibonacci words

Table 3: Some infinite  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words

In case of the extension of definition (2) to q = 4, the  $f_{2k}^{[4]} = 1$ ,  $f_{2k+1}^{[4]} = 1 \dots 10$ (the number of 1's is k) for any  $k \ge 1$  and there is no limit of  $f_i^{[4]}$  if  $i \to \infty$ . Therefore, we investigate the  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words, when  $q \ge 5$ .

Let  $\sigma^{[q]}$  be the {4, q}-Fibonacci morphism defined by

$$\{0,1\} \to \{0,1\}^*, \quad 0 \to 0^{q-4}10, \ 1 \to 0^{q-4}1,$$
 (3)

where  $q \ge 5$ .

**Theorem 1** The  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci morphism,  $\sigma^{[q]}$ , acts between every second words of  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words, so that

$$\sigma^{[q]}(f_{i-2}^{[q]}) = f_i^{[q]}, \qquad (i \ge 2).$$
(4)

**Proof.** We prove the assertion by induction on i. The statement is clearly true for i = 2, 3. Now we assume, that the result holds for any j, when  $4 \le j < i$ . Let i be first even. Then

$$\begin{split} \sigma^{[q]}(f^{[q]}_{i-2}) &= \sigma^{[q]} \left( \left( f^{[q]}_{i-3} \right)^{q-4} f^{[q]}_{i-4} \right) = \left( \sigma^{[q]}(f^{[q]}_{i-3}) \right)^{q-4} \sigma^{[q]}(f^{[q]}_{i-4}) \\ &= \left( f^{[q]}_{i-1} \right)^{q-4} f^{[q]}_{i-2} = f^{[q]}_{i} \end{split}$$

If i is odd the proof is similar,  $\sigma^{[q]}(f^{[q]}_{i-2}) = \sigma^{[q]}\left(f^{[q]}_{i-3}f^{[q]}_{i-4}\right) = \dots = f^{[q]}_i. \qquad \Box$ 

 $\label{eq:Remark 1} \textbf{Remark 1} \ \sigma^{[5]} = \sigma^2 \ \text{and} \ \sigma^2(f_i) = f_{i+2}.$ 

# 3 Connection between $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,q}$ and $\{4,q\}$ -Fibonacci words

We consider again the hyperbolic Pascal triangle  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,q}$ . Let us denote the left and right nodes '1' by type B (compare Figures 1 and 4). Let  $a_n$  and  $b_n$  be the number of vertices of type A and B in row n, respectively. Further let

$$\mathbf{s}_{\mathbf{n}} = \mathbf{a}_{\mathbf{n}} + \mathbf{b}_{\mathbf{n}},\tag{5}$$

that gives the total number of the vertices in row  $n \ge 0$ . Then the ternary homogeneous recurrence relation

$$s_{n} = (q-1)s_{n-1} - (q-1)s_{n-2} + s_{n-3} \qquad (n \ge 4)$$
(6)

holds with initial values  $s_0 = 1$ ,  $s_1 = 2$ ,  $s_2 = 3$ ,  $s_3 = q$  (recall, that  $q \ge 5$ ). For the explicit form see [1].

**Lemma 1** If  $n \ge 1$ , then

$$\mathbf{s}_{\mathbf{n}} = \mathbf{u}_{\mathbf{n}} + 2, \tag{7}$$

where  $u_1 = 0$ ,  $u_2 = 1$  and  $u_n = (q-2)u_{n-1} - u_{n-2}$ , if  $n \ge 3$ .

**Proof.** Let  $u_n = s_n - 2$ , where  $n \ge 1$ . Then  $u_1 = 0$ ,  $u_2 = 1$  and  $u_3 = s_3 - 2 = q - 2 = (q - 2)u_2 - u_1$ .

For general cases corresponding to  $n \ge 4$ , firstly, we have

$$\begin{split} \mathfrak{u}_{n} &= (q-1)s_{n-1} - (q-1)s_{n-2} + s_{n-3} - 2 \\ &= (q-1)(s_{n-1} - 2) - (q-1)(s_{n-2} - 2) + (s_{n-3} - 2) \\ &= (q-1)\mathfrak{u}_{n-1} - (q-1)\mathfrak{u}_{n-2} + \mathfrak{u}_{n-3}. \end{split}$$

This also means, that  $\{s_n\}$  and  $\{u_n\}$  have the same ternary recurrence relation (with different initial values).

Secondly, we show, that  $\{u_n\}$  can be described by a binary recurrence relation too. (In contrast  $\{s_n\}$  cannot.) Adding the equations  $u_n = (q-2)u_{n-1} - u_{n-2}$  and  $-u_{n-1} = -(q-2)u_{n-2} + u_{n-3}$ , we obtain  $u_n = (q-1)u_{n-1} - (q-1)u_{n-2} + u_{n-3}$ .

The first few terms of  $\{u_i\}$  are 0, 1, q-2,  $q^2-4q+3$ ,  $q^3-6q^2+10q-4$ ,  $q^4-8q^3+21q^2-20q+5$ .

**Lemma 2** Both of the sub-sequences consisting of every second term of  $\{F_i^{(a,b)}\}$  satisfy the relation

$$x_i = (ab+2)x_{i-2} - x_{i-4}, \quad (i \ge 4).$$
 (8)

Moreover, if  $n \geq 2$  then

$$\mathbf{u}_{n} = \mathsf{F}_{2n-2}^{(1,q-4)}. \tag{9}$$

**Proof.** For the first few terms of  $\{F_i^{(a,b)}\}$  the equation (8) is clearly true. We assume that for i - 1 ( $i \ge 6$ ) equation (8) also holds. Then if i is even,

$$\begin{split} F_{i}^{(a,b)} &= aF_{i-1}^{(a,b)} + F_{i-2}^{(a,b)} \\ &= a\left((ab+2)F_{i-3}^{(a,b)} - F_{i-5}^{(a,b)}\right) + \left((ab+2)F_{i-4}^{(a,b)} - F_{i-6}^{(a,b)}\right) \\ &= (ab+2)\left(aF_{i-3}^{(a,b)} + F_{i-4}^{(a,b)}\right) - \left(aF_{i-5}^{(a,b)} + F_{i-6}^{(a,b)}\right) \\ &= (ab+2)F_{i-2}^{(a,b)} - F_{i-4}^{(a,b)}. \end{split}$$

If i is odd, the proof is the same. For the case a = 1 and b = q - 4 we obtain the equation (9).

Let  $\{h_n^{[q]}\}_0^{\infty}$  be the sequence over  $\{A, B\}$ , where  $h_n^{[q]}$  equals to the concatenations of the type of the vertices of row  $\mathfrak{n}$  in  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,q}$  from left to the right.
Further, we call the elements of this the  $\{4, q\}$ -hyperbolic Pascal words (shortly q-hyperbolic Pascal words). For example in the case of q = 5 (see Figure 3), we have



Figure 3: Pattern of  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,5}$  up to row 5 and some Fibonacci words

Let us consider the bijection

$$\phi: \{0, 1\} \to \{A, B\}, \qquad \phi(1) = A, \qquad \phi(0) = B. \tag{10}$$

Let the words u and v be over  $\{0, 1\}$  and  $\{A, B\}$ , respectively. If  $\phi(u) = v$ , then we say that u is equivalent to v and we denote  $u \equiv v$ . For example from Figure 3 we have

$$f_1 = 0 \equiv B = h_0^{[5]}, \qquad 0f_1 = 00 \equiv BB = h_1^{[5]}, f_3 = 01f_1 = 010 \equiv BAB = h_2^{[5]}, \qquad 01f_3 = 01010 \equiv BABAB = h_3^{[5]}. \qquad (11)$$

Examining Figure 3 we can recognise that every second Fibonacci word is almost equivalent to the patterns of the rows in  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,5}$ . (Compare the patterns of rows in Figure 4 and  $f_{2n-3}^{[6]}$ , n = 2, 3, 4.) The following theorem gives the exact relationship between  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,q}$  and  $\{4,q\}$ -Fibonacci words.



Figure 4: Pattern of  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,6}$  up to row 4 and some Fibonacci words

**Theorem 2** If  $n \ge 2$ , then

$$01f_{2n-3}^{[q]} \equiv h_n^{[q]} \tag{12}$$

and

$$|f_{2n-3}^{[q]}| = F_{2n-2}^{(1,q-4)},$$

where  $1 \equiv A$ ,  $0 \equiv B$  and  $|h_n^{[q]}| = s_n$ .

**Proof.** If n = 2, then  $01f_1^{[q]} = 010 \equiv BAB = h_2^{[q]}$ . For higher values of n, examining the growing method of the hyperbolic Pascal triangles row by row based on Figure 2, we can recognise that except for the first two elements it can be described by the morphism

$$\lambda : \{A, B\} \to \{A, B\} \ast \quad \lambda(A) = (B)^{q-4}A, \quad \lambda(B) = (B)^{q-4}AB.$$
(13)

After comparing  $\lambda$  with the {4, q}-Fibonacci morphism  $\sigma^{[q]}$  between every second  $f_i^{[q]}$  according to Theorem 1, we can recognize that the growing methods (see Figure 2, (3) and (13)) are the same. This proves the equation (12), because the first two elements of all rows  $(n \geq 2)$  in  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,q}$  are B and A.

The second statement is a consequence of Lemma 2.

344

### 4 Some properties of {4, q}-Fibonacci words

Presumably, the connection between the  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words and the hyperbolic Pascal pyramids can open new opportunities for examining the Fibonacci words. We show some properties of  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words in which we use these connections.

Let a binary word u be the concatenation of the words v and w, thus u = vw. If we delete w from the end of u, we get v. Let us denote it by  $v = u \ominus w$ . In words, the sign  $\ominus$  acts so, that the word after the sign is deleted from the end of the word before the sign (if it is possible). For example  $f_4 = f_5 \ominus f_3 = 010010$  kV,  $f_6 = f_5 f_5 \ominus f_3 = 01001010 \cdot 01001$  kV or  $f_4^{[6]} = (f_3^{[6]})^3 \ominus f_5^{[6]} = 0010 \cdot 0010 \cdot 0010$ .

**Theorem 3** All  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words with  $(k \ge 2)$  can be given in terms of the previous two odd indexed ones, namely

$$\begin{array}{lll} f_{2k}^{[q]} & = & \left(f_{2k-1}^{[q]}\right)^{q-3} \ominus f_{2k-3}^{[q]}, \\ f_{2k+1}^{[q]} & = & \left(\left(f_{2k-1}^{[q]}\right)^{q-3} \ominus f_{2k-3}^{[q]}\right) f_{2k-1}^{[q]}. \end{array}$$

**Proof.** Applying  $f_{2k-1}^{[q]} = f_{2k-2}^{[q]} f_{2k-3}^{[q]}$  we can easily see that  $f_{2k-2}^{[q]} = f_{2k-1}^{[q]} \ominus f_{2k-3}^{[q]}$ . Furthermore, we can also see that  $f_{2k}^{[q]} = (f_{2k-1}^{[q]})^{q-4} f_{2k-2}^{[q]} = (f_{2k-1}^{[q]})^{q-4} f_{2k-1}^{[q]} \ominus f_{2k-3}^{[q]} = (f_{2k-1}^{[q]})^{q-4} f_{2k-3}^{[q]}$ . The second equation is the corollary of the first one. □

If q tends to infinity, then the numbers of '0' in infinite  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words are relatively fast growing (see Table 3). Now let us derive these ratios.

Let  $d_i^{[q]}$ ,  $d_{i,0}^{[q]}$  and  $d_{i,1}^{[q]}$  denote the numbers of all, '0' and '1' digits in the finite  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words, respectively. Then, let the limit  $r_0^{[q]} = \lim_{i\to\infty} (d_i^{[q]}/d_{i,0}^{[q]})$  be the inverse density of '0' digits in the infinite  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci word. Similarly, we denote the same density by  $r_1^{[q]} = \lim_{i\to\infty} (d_i^{[q]}/d_{i,1}^{[q]})$  in the case of '1' digits.

**Theorem 4** The inverse density of '0' and '1' digits in the infinite  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words are

$$r_0^{[q]} = \frac{q-4+\sqrt{q(q-4)}}{2(q-4)},$$
  
 
$$r_1^{[q]} = \frac{q-2+\sqrt{q(q-4)}}{2},$$

where  $q \geq 5$ . Moreover

$$\lim_{q\to\infty}r_0^{[q]}=1 \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{q\to\infty}r_1^{[q]}=\infty.$$

**Proof.** Firstly, let i be odd and large enough, so that i = 2n - 3. As  $01f_{2n-3}^{[q]} \equiv h_n^{[q]}$  from Theorem 2, we consider the ratio  $s_n/a_n$  from the hyperbolic Pascal triangle instead of the corresponding ratio  $d_{2n-3}^{[q]}/d_{2n-3,0}^{[q]}$ . Not only the sequence  $\{s_n\}$  can be described by the ternary recurrence relation (6) but also the sequences  $\{a_n\}$  and  $\{b_n\}$  (more details in [1]). The solutions of the characteristic equations of their recurrence relations are positive real numbers. Moreover, it is well-known that the limit of  $s_n/a_n$  is the density of the coefficients of the largest solutions (all solutions are positive), i.e.  $\alpha_s = -1/2 + (q - 2)\sqrt{q^2 - 4q}/(2q(q-4)), \alpha_a = (2-q)(1/2) + (q^2 - 4q+2)\sqrt{q^2 - 4q}/(2q(q-4)))$  and  $\alpha_b = (q - 3)(1/2) + (1 - q)\sqrt{q^2 - 4q}/(2q)$ . Thus,

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{d_{2n-3}^{[q]}}{d_{2n-3,0}^{[q]}} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{s_n}{b_n} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{\alpha_s}{\alpha_b} = \frac{q-4+\sqrt{q^2-4q}}{2(q-4)},$$
$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{d_{2n-3}^{[q]}}{d_{2n-3,1}^{[q]}} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{s_n}{\alpha_n} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{\alpha_s}{\alpha_a} = \frac{q-2+\sqrt{q^2-4q}}{2}.$$

Secondly, let i be even. According to Theorem 3 all the even indexed {4, q}-Fibonacci words can be derived in terms of the previous two elements. We also obtain, that  $d_{2k}^{[q]} = (q-3)d_{2k-1}^{[q]} - d_{2k-3}^{[q]}$ ,  $d_{2k,0}^{[q]} = (q-3)d_{2k-1,0}^{[q]} - d_{2k-3,0}^{[q]}$  and  $d_{2k,1}^{[q]} = (q-3)d_{2k-1,1}^{[q]} - d_{2k-3,1}^{[q]}$ . From it we have

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{d_{2k}^{[q]}}{d_{2k,0}^{[q]}} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{(q-3)d_{2k-1}^{[q]} - d_{2k-3}^{[q]}}{(q-3)d_{2k-1,0}^{[q]} - d_{2k-3,0}^{[q]}} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{d_{2k-1}^{[q]}}{d_{2k-1,0}^{[q]}},$$

and the case for digits '1' is similar. For the limits of  $r_0^{[q]}$  and  $r_1^{[q]}$ , the statement is obviously true.

Naturally, if q = 5 the results of Theorem 4 give the known  $r_0^{[5]} = \phi$  and  $r_1^{[5]} = 1 + \phi$  values, where  $\phi$  is the golden ratio.

Finally, here are some properties, which can directly be obtained from the properties of  $\mathcal{HPT}_{4,q}$ :

- The words  $\mathfrak{Olf}_{2n-3}^{[q]}\ (n\geq 2)$  are palindromes.

- The subword 11 never occurs in  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words.
- The subword 00...0 (q-2 digits 0) never occurs in words  $f_i^{[q]}$ .
- The last two digits of finite  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci words are alternately 01 and 10.
- The infinite  $\{4, q\}$ -Fibonacci word has n + 1 distinct subwords of length n, where  $n \leq q 2$ . In case n = q 2, they are 100...01 with q 4 digits 0 and the others are with only one digit 1, in case n < q 2 the subwords have at most one digit 1.

### References

- H. Belbachir, L. Németh, L. Szalay, Hyperbolic Pascal triangles, Appl. Math. Comp. 273 (2016), 453–464.
- [2] M. Edson, O. Yayenie, A New Generalization of Fibonacci Sequence & Extended Binet's Formula, Acta Polytechnica 55(1) (2015), 50–58.
- [3] G. Fici, Factorizations of the Fibonacci Infinite Word, Journal of Integer Sequences Vol. 18 (2015), 15.9.3.
- [4] M. Lothaire, Combinatorics on words, Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1983.
- [5] L. Németh, L. Szalay, Alternating sums in hyperbolic Pascal triangles, Miskolc Mathematical Notes, 17(2) (2016), 989–998.
- [6] L. Németh, L. Szalay, Recurrence sequences in the hyperbolic Pascal triangle corresponding to the regular mosaic {4,5}, Annales Mathematicae et Informaticae, 46 (2016), 165–173.
- [7] J. L. Ramírez, G. N. Rubiano, On the k-Fibonacci words, Acta Univ. Sapientiae, Informatica 5, 2 (2013), 212–226.
- [8] J. L. Ramírez, G. N. Rubiano, Biperiodic Fibonacci word and its fractal curve, *Fractals* 23.04 (2015), 1550047.

Received: April 17, 2017

open Acta Univ. Sapientiae, Mathematica, **9**, 2 (2017) 348–359

DOI: 10.1515/ausm-2017-0026

# An explicit formula for derivative polynomials of the tangent function

Feng Qi

Institute of Mathematics, Henan Polytechnic University, China College of Mathematics, Inner Mongolia University for Nationalities, China Department of Mathematics, College of Science, Tianjin Polytechnic University, China email: qifeng6180gmail.com, qifeng6180gmail.com Bai-Ni Guo

School of Mathematics and Informatics, Henan Polytechnic University, China email: bai.ni.guo@gmail.com, bai.ni.guo@hotmail.com

**Abstract.** In the paper, the authors derive an explicit formula for derivative polynomials of the tangent function, deduce an explicit formula for tangent numbers, pose an open problem about obtaining an alternative and explicit formula for derivative polynomials of the tangent function, and recommend some papers closely related to derivative polynomials of other elementary and applicable functions.

# 1 Introduction

It is not difficult to see that if f is a function whose derivative is a polynomial in f, that is,  $f'(x) = P_1(f(x))$  for some polynomial  $P_1$ , then all the higher order derivatives of f are also polynomials in f, so we have a sequence of polynomials

**<sup>2010</sup>** Mathematics Subject Classification: 26C99, 26A06, 26A09, 16A24, 33B10, 42A05 Key words and phrases: derivative polynomial; tangent function; explicit formula; tangent number; open problem

 $P_n$  defined by  $f^{(n)}(x) = P_n(f(x))$  for  $n \ge 0$ . As usual, we call  $P_n(u)$  the derivative polynomials of f. In fact, the polynomials  $P_n$  are determined by

$$P_0(u) = u, \quad P_{n+1}(u) = P'_n(u)P_1(u), \quad n \in \mathbb{N}.$$

For detailed information, please refer to [8, Section 2].

In 1945, Morley [10] observed that

$$(\tan x)' = 1 + \tan^2 x, \quad (\tan x)'' = 2 \tan x + 2 \tan^3 x, (\tan x)''' = 2 + (2 + 2 \cdot 3) \tan^2 x + 2 \cdot 3 \tan^4 x,$$
 (1)

a term  $a_k \tan^k x$  in  $(\tan x)^{(n)}$  gives  $(\tan x)^{(n+1)} ka_k \tan^{k-1} x + ka_k \tan^{k+1} x$ , and then concluded that the coefficient of  $\tan^{k-1} x$  in  $(\tan x)^{(n+1)}$  is  $(k-2)a_{k-2} + ka_k$ , with  $a_{k-2} = 0$  when  $k \le 1$ , and  $a_k = 0$  when  $k \ge n+2$ .

In 1995, Hoffman [8, p. 25, (5)] obtained that the derivative polynomials  $P_n$  for the tangent function tan x defined by

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}^{n}(\tan x)}{\mathrm{d}\,x^{n}} = \mathsf{P}_{n}(\tan x)$$

for  $n \ge 0$  are polynomials of degree n + 1 and satisfy the recurrence relation

$$P_{n+1}(u) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} {n \choose k} P_k(u) P_{n-k}(u) + \delta_{0n},$$

where

$$P_0(u)=u, \quad P_1(u)=1+u^2, \quad \mathrm{and} \quad \delta_{ij}=\begin{cases} 0, \quad i\neq j;\\ 1, \quad i=j. \end{cases}$$

In [1, 9, 12, 26, 27, 32, 36], there are some explicit formulas and recurrence relations for the nth derivatives of trigonometric functions and other elementary functions. In [3, 4, 5, 20, 21, 26, 30, 33], there are some inequalities for trigonometric functions and other elementary functions. Specially, there are some explicit formulas and many other results on the nth derivative of the tangent function tan x in [11, 14].

Motivated by those results in [8, 10] and other references mentioned above, we are interested in the question: can one find explicit formulas for coefficients  $a_k$  of the derivative polynomials  $P_n(u)$  for the tangent function  $\tan x$ ?

The aim of this paper is to answer the above question. Our main results can be stated as the following theorem. **Theorem 1** For  $n \ge 0$ , the derivative polynomials  $P_n(u)$  of the tangent function  $u = \tan x$  can be explicitly computed by

$$P_{n}(u) = \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{1}{2} \left[ n + \frac{1 - (-1)^{n}}{2} \right]} a_{n,n+1-2k} u^{n+1-2k}$$
(2)

with

$$a_{2m-1,0} = (-1)^m \sum_{\ell=1}^{2m} (-1)^{\ell} 2^{2m-\ell} (\ell-1)! S(2m,\ell)$$
(3)

for  $m \geq 1$  and

$$a_{n,n+1-2k} = (-1)^{k-1} \sum_{\ell=n+1-2k}^{n+1} (-1)^{n-\ell} 2^{n+1-\ell} (\ell-1)! \binom{\ell}{n+1-2k} S(n+1,\ell)$$

for  $0 \leq k \leq \frac{1}{2} \big[n - \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{2}\big]$ , where S(n,k) for  $n \geq k \geq 1$  stand for the Stirling numbers of the second kind which can be generated by

$$\frac{(e^{x}-1)^{k}}{k!} = \sum_{n=k}^{\infty} S(n,k) \frac{x^{n}}{n!}, \quad k \in \mathbb{N}.$$

In Section 3 of this paper, we will pose an open problem about obtaining an alternative and explicit formula

$$a_{n,n-2m+1} = (n+1)! \sum_{\ell=0}^{m-1} (-1)^{m-1-\ell} b_{m,\ell} n^{\ell}, \quad n \ge 2, \quad 1 \le m \le \frac{1}{2} \left[ n - \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{2} \right]$$
(4)

for derivative polynomials  $\mathsf{P}_n(x)$  of the tangent function  $\tan x,$  where  $\mathsf{b}_{m,\ell}$  is a sequence to be determined.

In the final section of this paper, we give a consequence of Theorem 1 and recommend some papers closely related to derivative polynomials of other elementary and applicable functions.

# 2 Proof of Theorem 1

Now we start out to simply prove our Theorems 1 as follows.

In [36, Theorem 2.1] and [36, Corollaries 2.1 and 2.2], it was obtained that

$$(\tan x)^{(n)} = (-i)^{n+1} \sum_{k=1}^{n+1} 2^{n+1-k} (k-1)! S(n+1,k) (i\tan x - 1)^k,$$
$$(\tan x)^{(n)} = (\tan x + i) \sum_{k=1}^{n} (2i)^{n-k} k! S(n,k) (\tan x - i)^k,$$

and

$$(\tan x)^{(n)} = \sum_{k=0}^{n+1} \left[ (-1)^{k+1} \cos\left(\frac{n+1+k}{2}\pi\right) \times \sum_{\ell=\max\{1,k\}}^{n+1} (-1)^{n-\ell} 2^{n-\ell+1} (\ell-1)! S(n+1,\ell) \binom{\ell}{k} \right] \tan^k x.$$
(5)

The identity (5) can be reformulated as

$$(\tan x)^{(n)} = -\cos\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\pi\right)\sum_{\ell=1}^{n+1}(-1)^{n-\ell}2^{n-\ell+1}(\ell-1)!S(n+1,\ell)$$
$$+\sum_{k=1}^{n+1}\left[(-1)^{k+1}\cos\left(\frac{n+1+k}{2}\pi\right)\sum_{\ell=k}^{n+1}(-1)^{n-\ell}2^{n-\ell+1}(\ell-1)!S(n+1,\ell)\binom{\ell}{k}\right]\tan^{k}x.$$

Consequently, we arrives at

$$a_{2m-1,0} = -\cos\left(\frac{2m}{2}\pi\right) \sum_{\ell=1}^{2m} (-1)^{2m-\ell-1} 2^{2m-\ell} (\ell-1)! S(2m,\ell)$$
$$= (-1)^m \sum_{\ell=1}^{2m} (-1)^\ell 2^{2m-\ell} (\ell-1)! S(2m,\ell)$$

for  $m \geq 1$  and

$$\begin{split} a_{n,n+1-2m} &= (-1)^n \cos((n+1-m)\pi) \\ &\sum_{\ell=n+1-2m}^{n+1} (-1)^{n-\ell} 2^{n-\ell+1} (\ell-1)! S(n+1,\ell) \binom{\ell}{n+1-2m} \\ &= (-1)^{m-1} \sum_{\ell=n+1-2m}^{n+1} (-1)^{n-\ell} 2^{n+1-\ell} (\ell-1)! S(n+1,\ell) \binom{\ell}{n+1-2m} \end{split}$$

for  $0 \le m \le \frac{1}{2} \left[ n - \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{2} \right]$ . The proof of Theorem 1 is thus complete.

# 3 An open problem

Now we would like to propose an open problem as follows.

The equation (2) means that

$$(\tan x)^{(n)} = \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{1}{2} \left[ n + \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{2} \right]} a_{n,n-2k+1} \tan^{n-2k+1} x.$$
(6)

Differentiating with respect to x on both sides of (6) gives

$$\begin{split} (\tan x)^{(n+1)} &= \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{1}{2} \left[n + \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{2}\right]} a_{n,n-2k+1}(n-2k+1) \tan^{n-2k} x \left(1 + \tan^2 x\right) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{1}{2} \left[n + \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{2}\right]} a_{n,n-2k+1}(n-2k+1) \tan^{n-2k} x \\ &+ \frac{\frac{1}{2} \left[n + \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{2}\right]}{\sum_{k=0}^{n-2k+1} a_{n,n-2k+1}(n-2k+1) \tan^{n-2k+2} x \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{\frac{1}{2} \left[n + \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{2}\right] + 1} a_{n,n-2k+3}(n-2k+3) \tan^{n-2k+2} x \\ &+ \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{1}{2} \left[n + \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{2}\right]} a_{n,n-2k+1}(n-2k+1) \tan^{n-2k+2} x \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{\frac{1}{2} \left[n + \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{2}\right]} \left[a_{n,n-2k+3}(n-2k+3) + a_{n,n-2k+1}(n-2k+1)\right] \tan^{n-2k+2} x \\ &+ a_{n,n+1}(n+1) \tan^{n+2} x + a_{n,\frac{1 + (-1)^n}{2}} \frac{1 + (-1)^n}{2} \tan^{\frac{(-1)^n - 1}{2}} x. \end{split}$$

Comparing this with

$$(\tan x)^{(n+1)} = \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{1}{2} \left[ n + 1 + \frac{1 + (-1)^n}{2} \right]} a_{n+1,n-2k+2} (\tan x)^{n-2k+2}$$

yields

$$a_{n+1,n+2} = a_{n,n+1}(n+1),$$
 (7)

$$a_{n+1,\frac{1-(-1)^n}{2}}\tan^{\frac{1-(-1)^n}{2}}x = a_{n,\frac{1+(-1)^n}{2}}\frac{1+(-1)^n}{2}\tan^{\frac{(-1)^n-1}{2}}x,$$
(8)

and

$$a_{n+1,n-2k+2} = a_{n,n-2k+3}(n-2k+3) + a_{n,n-2k+1}(n-2k+1)$$
(9)

for  $n \ge 1$  and  $1 \le k \le \frac{1}{2} \left[ n + \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{2} \right]$ .

The derivatives of the tangent function  $\tan x$  in (1) means that  $a_{0,1} = 1$ ,  $a_{1,2} = 1$ ,  $a_{2,3} = 2$ , and  $a_{3,4} = 2 \cdot 3$ . Combining these values with (7) reveals that  $a_{n,n+1} = n!$  for all  $n \ge 0$ .

The derivatives of the tangent function  $\tan x \text{ in } (1)$  also means that  $a_{1,0} = 1$ ,  $a_{2,1} = 2$ , and  $a_{3,0} = 2$ . When  $n = 2\ell$  for  $\ell \ge 0$ , the recurrence relation (8) becomes

$$\mathfrak{a}_{2\ell+1,0}=\mathfrak{a}_{2\ell,1}.$$

When k = 1, the recurrence relation (9) can be simplified as

$$a_{n+1,n} = a_{n,n+1}(n+1) + a_{n,n-1}(n-1) = a_{n,n-1}(n-1) + (n+1)!$$

for  $n \geq 2$ . From this recurrence relation, we acquire

$$a_{n,n-1} = \frac{1}{3}(n+1)!, \quad n \ge 2.$$
 (10)

When k = 2, by (10), the recurrence relation (9) can be rearranged as

$$a_{n+1,n-2} = a_{n,n-1}(n-1) + a_{n,n-3}(n-3) = a_{n,n-3}(n-3) + (n-1)\frac{(n+1)!}{3}$$

for  $n \geq 4$ . Accordingly, it follows that

$$a_{n,n-3} = \frac{5n-8}{90}(n+1)!, \quad n \ge 4.$$
 (11)

When k = 3, by (11), the recurrence relation (9) can be rewritten as

$$a_{n+1,n-4} = a_{n,n-3}(n-3) + a_{n,n-5}(n-5) = a_{n,n-5}(n-5) + (n-3)\frac{5n-8}{90}(n+1)!$$

for  $n \ge 6$ . Therefore, it follows that

$$a_{n,n-5} = \frac{35n^2 - 203n + 264}{5670}(n+1)!, \quad n \ge 6.$$
 (12)

Similarly as above processing, we can procure that

$$a_{n,n-7} = \frac{175n^3 - 2205n^2 + 8654n - 10272}{340200}(n+1)!, \quad n \ge 8,$$
(13)  
$$a_{n,n-7} = \frac{385n^4 - 8470n^3 + 66539n^2 - 217910n + 244704}{(n+1)!}, \quad n \ge 10,$$

$$a_{n,n-9} = \frac{20000 - 0000 + 20000 + 20000 + 20000 + 2000 + 2000 + 2000 + 2000 + 2000 + 2000 + 2000 + 2000 + 200$$

and the like. Accordingly, from (10), (11), (12), (13), and (14), we can conclude that

$$a_{n,n-2m+1} = (n+1)! \sum_{\ell=0}^{m-1} (-1)^{m-1-\ell} b_{m,\ell} n^{\ell},$$

$$n \ge 2, \quad 1 \le m \le \frac{1}{2} \left[ n - \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{2} \right].$$
(15)

Substituting this conclusion into (9) leads to

$$\begin{split} (n+2)! \sum_{\ell=0}^{k-1} (-1)^{k-1-\ell} b_{k,\ell} (n+1)^{\ell} &= (n-2k+3)(n+1)! \sum_{\ell=0}^{k-2} (-1)^{k-2-\ell} b_{k-1,\ell} n^{\ell} \\ &+ (n-2k+1)(n+1)! \sum_{\ell=0}^{k-1} (-1)^{k-1-\ell} b_{k,\ell} n^{\ell}, \\ &\sum_{\ell=0}^{k-1} (-1)^{\ell+1} \big[ (n+2)(n+1)^{\ell} - (n-2k+1)n^{\ell} \big] b_{k,\ell} \\ &= (n-2k+3) \sum_{\ell=0}^{k-2} (-1)^{\ell} n^{\ell} b_{k-1,\ell}, \end{split}$$

where  $n\geq 4$  and  $2\leq k\leq \frac{1}{2}\big[n-\frac{1-(-1)^n}{2}\big].$  Note that the sequence  $b_{k,\ell}$  are independent of n.

To the best of our knowledge, we think that it is much difficult to explicitly determine the sequence  $b_{m,\ell}$  in (15). Can one present a closed form for the sequence  $b_{m,\ell}$  in (15)?

# 4 Remarks

Finally we comment on Theorem 1 and recommend some references closely related to derivative polynomials of other elementary and applicable functions.

**Remark 1** The expression (3) implies an explicit formula

$$T_{2m-1} = (-1)^m \sum_{\ell=1}^{2m} (-1)^\ell 2^{2m-\ell} (\ell-1)! S(2m,\ell), \quad m \geq 1$$

for tangent numbers  $T_{2m-1}$  which can be generated by

$$\tan x = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \mathsf{T}_{2k-1} \frac{x^{2k-1}}{(2k-1)!}, \quad |x| < \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

For more information on tangent numbers  $T_{2m-1}$ , please refer to [1, 11, 14, 36] and the closely related references therein.

**Remark 2** It is worthwhile to recommending the paper [2] which was found on 3 March 2017 by the authors.

**Remark 3** Except the above-mentioned literature, there are other papers such as [6, 7, 13, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 22, 23, 24, 25, 28, 29, 31, 34, 35, 36, 37] and the closely related references therein to discuss derivative polynomials of other elementary and applicable functions.

#### Acknowledgements

The authors are grateful to the anonymous referees for their careful corrections to the original version of this paper.

### References

- [1] L. C. Bouvier, Analise transcendante. Loi du développement de la tangente en fonction de l'arc, Ann. Math. Pures Appl. [Ann. Gergonne], 14 (1823/24), 347-349; Available online at http://www.numdam.org/numdam-bin/fitem?id=AMPA\_1823-1824\_\_14\_\_347\_1. (French)
- [2] K. N. Boyadzhiev, Derivative polynomials for tanh, tan, sech and sec in explicit form, *Fibonacci Quart.*, 45 (2007), no. 4, 291–303 (2008); Available online at https://arxiv.org/abs/0903.0117.
- [3] C.-P. Chen, F. Qi, A double inequality for remainder of power series of tangent function, *Tamkang J. Math.*, **34** (2003), no. 4, 351–355; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.5556/j.tkjm.34.2003.236.

- [4] C.-P. Chen, F. Qi, A double inequality for remainder of power series of tangent function, *RGMIA Res. Rep. Coll.*, 5 (2002), Suppl., Art. 2; Available online at http://rgmia.org/v5(E).php.
- [5] B.-N. Guo, Q.-M. Luo, F. Qi, Sharpening and generalizations of Shafer-Fink's double inequality for the arc sine function, *Filomat*, 27 (2013), no. 2, 261–265; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.2298/ FIL1302261G.
- [6] B.-N. Guo, F. Qi, Explicit formulae for computing Euler polynomials in terms of Stirling numbers of the second kind, J. Comput. Appl. Math., 272 (2014), 251-257; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.cam.2014.05.018.
- [7] B.-N. Guo, F. Qi, Some identities and an explicit formula for Bernoulli and Stirling numbers, J. Comput. Appl. Math., 255 (2014), 568–579; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.cam.2013.06.020.
- [8] M. E. Hoffman, Derivative polynomials for tangent and secant, Amer. Math. Monthly, 102 (1995), no. 1, 23–30; Available online at http://dx. doi.org/10.2307/2974853.
- M. E. Hoffman, Derivative polynomials, Euler polynomials, and associated integer sequences, *Electron. J. Combin*, 6 (1999), Research Paper 21, 13 pages; Available online at http://www.combinatorics.org/Volume\_6/Abstracts/v6i1r21.html.
- [10] R. K. Morley, Brief notes and comments. Successive derivatives of tan x, National Mathematics Magazine, 19 (1945), no. 6, 311–312; Available online at http://www.jstor.org/stable/3030048.
- F. Qi, Derivatives of tangent function and tangent numbers, Appl. Math. Comput., 268 (2015), 844-858; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/ 10.1016/j.amc.2015.06.123.
- [12] F. Qi, Explicit formulas for the n-th derivatives of the tangent and cotangent functions, arXiv preprint, (2012), available online at http: //arxiv.org/abs/1202.1205.
- [13] F. Qi, V. Čerňanová, and Y. S. Semenov, On tridiagonal determinants and the Cauchy product of central Delannoy numbers, *ResearchGate Working Paper*, (2016), available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.13140/RG.2. 1.3772.6967.

- [14] F. Qi, J. Gélinas, Revisiting Bouvier's paper on tangent numbers, Adv. Appl. Math. Sci., 16 (2017), no. 8, 275–281.
- [15] F. Qi, Explicit formulas for the convolved Fibonacci numbers, Research-Gate Working Paper, (2016), available online at http://dx.doi.org/10. 13140/RG.2.2.36768.17927.
- [16] F. Qi, B.-N. Guo, Explicit formulas and recurrence relations for higher order Eulerian polynomials, *Indag. Math.*, 28 (2017), no. 4, 884–891; Available online at https://doi.org/10.1016/j.indag.2017.06.010.
- [17] F. Qi and B.-N. Guo, Explicit formulas for derangement numbers and their generating function, J. Nonlinear Funct. Anal., 2016, Article ID 45, 10 pages.
- [18] F. Qi, Q. Zou, and B.-N. Guo, Some identities and a matrix inverse related to the Chebyshev polynomials of the second kind and the Catalan numbers, *Preprints*, 2017, 2017030209, 25 pages; Available online at https://doi.org/10.20944/preprints201703.0209.v2.
- F. Qi and B.-N. Guo, Several explicit and recursive formulas for the generalized Motzkin numbers, *Preprints*, 2017, 2017030200, 11 pages; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.20944/preprints201703.0200.v1.
- [20] F. Qi, B.-N. Guo, Sharpening and generalizations of Shafer's inequality for the arc sine function, *Integral Transforms Spec. Funct.*, 23 (2012), no. 2, 129–134; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/10652469. 2011.564578.
- [21] F. Qi, B.-N. Guo, Sharpening and generalizations of Shafer's inequality for the arc tangent function, arXiv preprint, (2009), available online at http://arxiv.org/abs/0902.3298.
- [22] F. Qi, B.-N. Guo, A diagonal recurrence relation for the Stirling numbers of the first kind, *Appl. Anal. Discrete Math.*, **12** (2018), no. 1, in press; Available online at https://doi.org/10.2298/AADM170405004Q.
- F. Qi, B.-N. Guo, Some properties of the Hermite polynomials and their squares and generating functions, *Preprints*, 2016, 2016110145, 14 pages; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.20944/preprints201611.0145.v1.

- [24] F. Qi, B.-N. Guo, Viewing some nonlinear ODEs and their solutions from the angle of derivative polynomials, *ResearchGate Working Paper*, (2016), available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.13140/RG.2.1.4593.1285.
- F. Qi, B.-N. Guo, Viewing some ordinary differential equations from the angle of derivative polynomials, *Preprints*, 2016, 2016100043, 12 pages; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.20944/preprints201610.0043.v1.
- [26] F. Qi, D.-W. Niu, B.-N. Guo, Refinements, generalizations, and applications of Jordan's inequality and related problems, *J. Inequal. Appl.*, 2009 (2009), Article ID 271923, 52 pages; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.1155/2009/271923.
- [27] F. Qi, X.-T. Shi, F.-F. Liu, D. V. Kruchinin, Several formulas for special values of the Bell polynomials of the second kind and applications, J. Appl. Anal. Comput., 7 (2017), no. 3, 857–871; Available online at https: //doi.org/10.11948/2017054.
- [28] F. Qi, J.-L. Wang, B.-N. Guo, Notes on a family of inhomogeneous linear ordinary differential equations, Adv. Appl. Math. Sci., 17 (2018), no. 4, 361–368.
- [29] F. Qi, J.-L. Wang, B.-N. Guo, Simplifying and finding nonlinear ordinary differential equations, *ResearchGate Working Paper*, (2017), available online at https://doi.org/10.13140/RG.2.2.28855.32166.
- [30] F. Qi, S.-Q. Zhang, B.-N. Guo, Sharpening and generalizations of Shafer's inequality for the arc tangent function, *J. Inequal. Appl.*, 2009, Article ID 930294, 9 pages; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.1155/ 2009/930294.
- [31] F. Qi, J.-L. Zhao, Some properties of the Bernoulli numbers of the second kind and their generating function, ResearchGate Working Paper (2017), available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.13140/RG.2.2. 13058.27848.
- [32] F. Qi, M.-M. Zheng, Explicit expressions for a family of the Bell polynomials and applications, *Appl. Math. Comput.*, **258** (2015), 597–607; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.amc.2015.02.027.
- [33] J.-L. Zhao, Q.-M. Luo, B.-N. Guo, F. Qi, Remarks on inequalities for the tangent function, *Hacettepe J. Math. Statist.*, 41 (2012), no. 4, 499–506.

- [34] J.-L. Zhao, F. Qi, Two explicit formulas for the generalized Motzkin numbers, J. Inequal. Appl., 2017, 2017:44, 8 pages; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.1186/s13660-017-1313-3.
- [35] J.-L. Zhao, J.-L. Wang, F. Qi, Derivative polynomials of a function related to the Apostol-Euler and Frobenius-Euler numbers, J. Nonlinear Sci. Appl., 10 (2017), no. 4, 1345–1349; Available online at http://dx.doi. org/10.22436/jnsa.010.04.06.
- [36] A.-M. Xu, G.-D. Cen, Closed formulas for computing higher-order derivatives of functions involving exponential functions, *Appl. Math. Comput.*, 270 (2015), 136-141; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.amc.2015.08.051.
- [37] A.-M. Xu, Z.-D. Cen, Some identities involving exponential functions and Stirling numbers and applications, J. Comput. Appl. Math., 260 (2014), 201-207; Available online at http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.cam.2013. 09.077.

Received: February 8, 2017

DOI: 10.1515/ausm-2017-0027

# A natural Galois connection between generalized norms and metrics

Árpád Száz Department of Mathematics, University of Debrecen, H-4002 Debrecen, Pf. 400, Hungary email: szaz@science.unideb.hu

**Abstract.** Having in mind a well-known connection between norms and metrics on vector spaces, for an additively written group X, we establish a natural Galois connection between functions of X to  $\mathbb{R}$  and  $X^2$  to  $\mathbb{R}$ .

#### 1 Introduction

In this paper, for an additively written group X, we shall consider the sets

$$\mathcal{N} = \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{X}) = \mathbb{R}^{\mathbf{X}}$$
 and  $\mathcal{M} = \mathcal{M}(\mathbf{X}) = \mathbb{R}^{\mathbf{X}^2}$ 

to be equipped with the usual pointwise inequality of real-valued functions.

Moreover, having in mind a well-known connection between norms and metrics on vector spaces, for any  $p \in \mathcal{N}$ ,  $d \in \mathcal{M}$  and  $x, y \in X$  we define

$$p_d(x) = d(0, x)$$
 and  $d_p(x, y) = p(-x+y)$ .

Thus, it can be easily seen that, for any  $p \in \mathcal{N}$  and  $d \in \mathcal{M}$ ,

(1) 
$$\mathbf{d}_{\mathfrak{p}} \leq \mathbf{d} \implies \mathbf{p} \leq \mathbf{p}_{\mathbf{d}}$$
, (2)  $\mathbf{p} \leq \mathbf{p}_{\mathbf{d}} \implies \mathbf{d}_{\mathfrak{p}} \leq \mathbf{d}_{\mathbf{p}_{\mathbf{d}}}$ 

<sup>2010</sup> Mathematics Subject Classification: O6A15, 20A99, 54E25

Key words and phrases: groups, preseminorms, invariant semimetrics, Galois connections

Moreover, if in particular

 $d\left(x,\,y\right)=\left|\,\phi\left(x\right)-\phi\left(y\right)\,\right|,\qquad\mathrm{with}\qquad\phi\left(x\right)=x/\left(1+\left|\,x\,\right|\,\right),$ 

for all  $x,\,y\in\mathbb{R}\,,$  then d is a metric on  $\mathbb{R}$  such that  $d_{p_d}\not\leq d\,,$  despite that  $p=p_{d_p}$  for all  $p\in\mathcal{N}\,.$ 

Therefore, by defining

$$\mathcal{M}^{\wedge} = \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}(X) = \left\{ d \in \mathcal{M}(X) : \quad d_{\mathfrak{p}_{d}} \leq d \right\},$$

we can note that the functions, defined by

$$f(p) = d_p$$
 and  $g(d) = p_d$ 

for all  $p \in \mathcal{N}$  and  $d \in \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}$ , establish an increasing Galois connection [21, 24] between the posets  $\mathcal{N}$  and  $\mathcal{M}^{\wedge}$  in the sense that, for any  $p \in \mathcal{N}$  and  $d \in \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}$ , we have

$$f(p) \leq d \iff p \leq g(d)$$

Some very particular Galois connections have also been investigated in Lambek [12] and our former papers [17, 18, 20, 3, 23, 25, 26]. However, to get a proper overview on Galois connections, the interested reader must consult most of the books [1, 2, 9, 7, 4, 5].

To feel the importance of our present Galois connection, note that if in particular  $p \in \mathcal{N}$  is a preseminorm [16, 28] on X in the sense that

 $(1) \ p(0) \le 0, \qquad (2) \ p(-x) \le p(x), \qquad (3) \ p(x+y) \le p(x) + p(y)$ 

for all  $x, y \in X$ , then  $d_p$  is a left-invariant semimetric on X such that

$$d(p(x), p(y)) = |p(x) - p(y)| \le d_{p}(x, y)$$

for all  $x, y \in X$ .

Conversely, if d is a left-invariant semimetric on X, then  $p_d$  is a preseminorm on X such that  $d = d_{p_d}$ . Therefore, preseminorms and left-invariant semimetrics are equivalent tools in a group. However, in contrast to the opinions of several authors, the former ones, being a function of only one variable, are certainly more convenient tools than the latter ones.

In this respect, it is also worth mentioning that if in particular d is the postman metric [22] on  $\mathbb{C}$ , i.e.,

$$d(x, y) = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad x = y \qquad \text{and} \qquad d(x, y) = |x| + |y| \quad \text{if} \quad x \neq y.$$

for any  $x,y\in\mathbb{C}\,,$  then d is a metric on  $\mathbb{C}$  such that  $d\in\mathcal{M}^\wedge(\mathbb{C}\,)\,,$  but  $d\neq d_{p_d}\,.$ 

### 2 Generalized norms and metrics

Notation 1 In the sequel, we shall assume that X is an additively written group, and we shall write

$$\mathcal{N} = \mathcal{N}(X) = \mathbb{R}^X$$
 and  $\mathcal{M} = \mathcal{M}(X) = \mathbb{R}^{X^2}$ .

Moreover, on the sets  $\mathcal{N}$  and  $\mathcal{M}$  we shall consider the usual pointwise inequality of real-valued functions.

**Remark 1** Thus, for instance,  $\mathcal{N}$  is the space of all functions of X to  $\mathbb{R}$ . Moreover, since  $X^2$  is also a group, we can note that  $\mathcal{M}(X) = \mathcal{N}(X^2)$ .

The members of the families  $\mathcal{N}$  and  $\mathcal{M}$  may be considered as certain generalized norms and metrics on X, respectively. They can be easily connected by the following

**Definition 1** For any  $d \in \mathcal{M}$ ,  $p \in \mathcal{N}$  and  $x, y \in X$ , we define

 $p_{d}(x) = d\left(0, x\right) \qquad \mathrm{and} \qquad d_{p}\left(x, y\right) = p\left(-x + y\right).$ 

**Remark 2** Moreover, for any  $p \in \mathcal{N}$  and  $d \in \mathcal{M}$ , we also define

 $f(p) = d_p$  and  $g(d) = p_d$ .

Thus, the functions f and g establish a natural connection between  ${\cal N}$  and  ${\cal M}.$ 

By Definition 1, we evidently have the following

**Theorem 1** For any  $p, q \in \mathcal{N}$  and  $d, \rho \in \mathcal{M}$ ,

 $(1) \quad \mathfrak{p} \leq \mathfrak{q} \implies d_\mathfrak{p} \leq d_\mathfrak{q} \,, \qquad \qquad (2) \quad d \leq \rho \implies \mathfrak{p}_d \leq \mathfrak{p}_\rho \,.$ 

**Remark 3** Thus, by Remark 2, for any  $p, q \in \mathcal{N}$  and  $d, \rho \in \mathcal{M}$ 

(1)  $p \le q \implies f(p) \le f(q)$ , (2)  $d \le \rho \implies g(d) \le g(\rho)$ .

Therefore, the functions f and g are increasing.

Moreover, by using Definition 1, we can also easily prove the following

**Theorem 2** For any  $p \in \mathcal{N}$ , we have

(1)  $p = p_{d_p}$ , (2)  $d_p = d_{p_{d_p}}$ .

**Proof.** For any  $x \in X$ , we have

$$p_{d_{p}}(x) = d_{p}(0, x) = p(-0 + x) = p(x).$$

Therefore,  $d_{p_{d_p}} = p$ , and thus (1) is true. Assertion (2) follows from (1).

**Remark 4** By Theorem 2 and Remark 2, for any  $p \in \mathcal{N}$  we have

(1) p = g(f(p)), (2) f(p) = f(g(f(p))).

Hence, we at once see that f is injective and g maps the range of f onto  $\mathcal{N}$ . Moreover,  $g \circ f$  and  $f \circ g$  are the identity functions of  $\mathcal{N}$  and  $f[\mathcal{N}]$ , respectively.

Now, as an immediate consequence of Theorems 1 and 2, we can also state

**Theorem 3** For any  $p \in \mathcal{N}$  and  $d \in \mathcal{M}$ ,

 $(1) \quad d_{\mathfrak{p}} \leq d \implies \mathfrak{p} \leq \mathfrak{p}_{d} , \qquad \qquad (2) \quad \mathfrak{p} \leq \mathfrak{p}_{d} \implies d_{\mathfrak{p}} \leq d_{\mathfrak{p}_{d}} .$ 

**Proof.** To prove (1), note that if  $d_p \leq d$  holds, then by Theorem 1 we also have  $p_{d_p} \leq p_d$ . Moreover, by Theorem 2, we have  $p_{d_p} = p$ . Therefore,  $p \leq p_d$  also holds.

**Remark 5** By Theorem 3 and Remark 2, for any  $p \in \mathcal{N}$  and  $d \in \mathcal{M}$ 

 $(1) \ f(p) \leq d \implies p \leq g(d), \qquad (2) \ p \leq g(d) \implies f(p) \leq f(g(d)).$ 

#### 3 Three important subfamilies of $\mathcal{M}$

Because of Theorem 3, we may naturally introduce the following

Definition 2 Define

$$\begin{split} \mathcal{M}^* &= \mathcal{M}^*(X) = \left\{ \, d \in \mathcal{M} \left( X \right) : \quad d = d_{p_d} \, \right\}, \\ \mathcal{M}^\wedge &= \mathcal{M}^\wedge(X) = \left\{ \, d \in \mathcal{M} \left( X \right) : \quad d_{p_d} \leq d \, \right\}, \\ \mathcal{M}^\vee &= \mathcal{M}^\vee(X) = \left\{ \, d \in \mathcal{M} \left( X \right) : \quad d \leq d_{p_d} \, \right\}. \end{split}$$

**Remark 6** Thus, by Remark 2, we have

$$\begin{split} \mathcal{M}^* &= \mathcal{M}^*(X) = \big\{ \, d \in \mathcal{M} : \quad d = f \, \big( \, g \, (d) \big) \big\}, \\ \mathcal{M}^\wedge &= \mathcal{M}^\wedge(X) = \big\{ \, d \in \mathcal{M} : \quad f \, \big( \, g \, (d) \big) \leq d \, \big\}, \\ \mathcal{M}^\vee &= \mathcal{M}^\vee(X) = \big\{ \, d \in \mathcal{M} : \quad d \leq f \, \big( \, g \, (d) \big) \big\}. \end{split}$$

The importance of the family  $\mathcal{M}^{\wedge}$  is already quite obvious from the following

**Theorem 4** For any  $d \in M$ , the following assertions are equivalent:

(1) 
$$\mathbf{d} \in \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}$$
, (2)  $\mathbf{p} \le \mathbf{p}_{\mathbf{d}} \implies \mathbf{d}_{\mathbf{p}} \le \mathbf{d}$  for all  $\mathbf{p} \in \mathcal{N}$ .

**Proof.** If  $p \in \mathcal{N}$  and  $p \leq p_d$ , then by Theorem 1 we have  $d_p \leq d_{p_d}$ . Moreover, if in particular (1) holds, then by Definition 2 we have  $d_{p_d} \leq d$ . Therefore, if (1) holds, then  $d_p \leq d$ , and thus (2) also holds.

Conversely, if (2) holds, the from the trivial inequality  $p_d \leq p_d$  we can already infer that  $d_{p_d} \leq d$ . Thus, by Definition 2, (1) also holds.

**Remark 7** By Theorem 4 and Remark 2, for any  $d \in \mathcal{M}$  the following assertions are equivalent:

 $(1) \quad d \in \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}\,, \qquad \qquad (2) \quad p \leq g\left(d\right) \implies f\left(p\right) \leq d \ \, {\rm for \ all} \ \, p \in \mathcal{N}\,.$ 

Now, as an immediate consequence of Theorems 3 and 4, we can also state

**Theorem 5** For any  $p \in \mathcal{N}$  and  $d \in \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}$ , we have

$$d_p \leq d \iff p \leq p_d$$
.

**Remark 8** Thus, by Remark 2, for any  $p \in \mathcal{N}$  and  $d \in \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}$  we have

$$f(p) \leq d \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad p \leq g(d)$$

This shows that the function f and the restriction of g to  $\mathcal{M}^{\wedge}$  form an increasing Galois connection [19, 21, 24] between the posets  $\mathcal{N}$  and  $\mathcal{M}^{\wedge}$ .

Thus, several consequences of Definition 1 can be immediately derived from the theory of Galois connections [1, 2, 9, 7, 4].

However, because of the simplicity of Definition 1, it seems now more convenient to apply some direct proofs.

For instance, by using Definition 2 and Theorem 2, we can easily prove

**Theorem 6** For any  $d \in M$ , the following assertions are equivalent:

(1)  $d \in \mathcal{M}^*$ , (2)  $d = d_p$  for some  $p \in \mathcal{N}$ .

**Proof.** If (1) holds, then by Definition 2 we have  $d = d_{p_d}$ . Therefore, (2) also holds with  $p = p_d$ .

Moreover, by Theorem 2, we have  $d_p = d_{p_{d_p}}$ , and thus by Definition 2  $d_p \in \mathcal{M}^*$  for all  $p \in \mathcal{N}$ . Therefore, if (2) holds, then (1) also holds.

**Remark 9** From Theorem 6, by Remark 2, we can see that  $\mathcal{M}^* = f[\mathcal{N}]$ .

# $\ \ \, {\bf 4} \quad {\bf Some \ further \ characterizations \ of \ } {\mathcal M}^\wedge \ {\rm and \ } {\mathcal M}^*$

In addition to Theorem 4, we can also prove the following

**Theorem 7** For any  $d \in M$ , the following assertions are equivalent:

- (1)  $\mathbf{d} \in \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}$ ,
- (2)  $d(0, y) \leq d(x, x+y)$  for all  $x, y \in X$ ,
- (3)  $d(0, -x+y) \leq d(x, y)$  for all  $x, y \in X$ .

**Proof.** By Definition 2, (1) means only that  $d_{p_d} \leq d$ . That is,

$$d_{p_d}(x, y) \leq d(x, y)$$

for all  $x y \in X$ . Hence, by using that

$$d_{p_d}(x, y) = p_d(-x + y) = d(0, -x + y)$$

for all  $x, y \in X$ , we can see that (1) and (3) are equivalent.

Moreover, if (3) holds, then by writing x + y in place of y, we can see that (2) also holds. While, if (2) holds, then by writing -x + y in place of y we can see that (3) also holds.

Analogously to Theorem 7, we can also prove the following

**Theorem 8** For any  $d \in M$ , the following assertions are equivalent:

(1) 
$$\mathbf{d} \in \mathcal{M}^{\vee}$$

(2)  $d(x, x+y) \leq d(0, y)$  for all  $x, y \in X$ ,

(3)  $d(x, y) \leq d(0, -x+y)$  for all  $x, y \in X$ .

Now, by using that  $\mathcal{M}^* = \mathcal{M}^{\wedge} \cap \mathcal{M}^{\vee}$ , we can also prove the following

**Theorem 9** For any  $d \in M$ , the following assertions are equivalent:

d ∈ M\*,
 d (0, y) = d (x, x + y) for all x, y ∈ X,
 d (x, y) = d (0, -x + y) for all x, y ∈ X,
 d (x, y) = d (z + x, z + y) for all x, y, z ∈ X,
 d (x, y) ≤ d (z + x, z + y) for all x, y, z ∈ X,
 d (z + x, z + y) ≤ d (x, y) for all x, y, z ∈ X.

**Proof.** By Theorems 7 and 8, it is clear that (1), (2) and (3) are equivalent. Moreover, if (4) holds, then by writing -x in place of z we can see that (3) also holds.

While, if (3) holds, then we have

$$d(z+x, z+y) = d(0, -(z+x)+z+y) = d(0, -x-z+z+y) = d(0, -x+y) = d(x, y)$$

for all  $x, y, z \in X$ . Therefore, (4) also holds.

Now, since (4) trivially implies (5) and (6), it remains to show only that that (5) and (6) also imply (4). For this, note that if for instance (6) holds, then by writing -z + x in place of x and -z + y in place of y, we obtain

 $d(x, y) \le d(-z + x, -z + y)$ 

for all  $x, y, z \in X$ . Hence, by writing -z in place of z, we can see that (5) also holds. Therefore, we actually have (4).

**Remark 10** The above theorem shows that  $\mathcal{M}^*$  is just the family of all left-invariant members of  $\mathcal{M}$ .

Moreover, by using Theorem 9, we can also prove the following

**Theorem 10** For a symmetric member d of  $\mathcal{M}$ , the following assertions are also equivalent:

(1)  $\mathbf{d} \in \mathcal{M}^*$ , (2)  $\mathbf{d}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{d}(\mathbf{z} + \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z})$  for all  $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z} \in \mathbf{X}$ .

**Proof.** If (1) holds, then from (4) in Theorem 9, by taking y = 0, we can at once see that (2) also holds even if d is not assumed to be symmetric.

While, if (2) holds, then by using the symmetry of d, we can see that

$$d(0, y) = d(y, 0) = d(x+y, x) = d(x, x+y)$$

for all  $x, y \in X$ . Therefore, by Theorem 9, assertion (1) also holds.

#### 5 Two illustrating particular metrics

**Theorem 11** Suppose that X is a normed space such that

$$\| u + v \| < \| u \| + \| v \|$$

for some  $u, v \in X$  with  $u + v \neq 0$ . And, for any  $x, y \in X$ , define

 $d\left(x,\,y\right)=0\quad \mathrm{if}\quad x=y\qquad \mathrm{and}\qquad d\left(x,\,y\right)=\|\,x\,\|+\|\,y\,\|\quad \mathrm{if}\quad x\neq y\,.$ 

Then, d is a metric on X such that

$$d \in \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}(X) \setminus \mathcal{M}^{\vee}(X).$$

**Proof.** To prove the latter statement, note that, for any  $x, y \in X$  with  $y \neq 0$ , we have

$$d(0, y) = ||y|| = ||-x + x + y|| \le ||x|| + ||x + y|| = d(x, x + y).$$

Hence, since  $d(0, 0) \le d(x, x)$  trivially holds, by Theorem 7 we can see that  $d \in \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}(X)$ .

Moreover, note that for x = -u and y = u + v we have

$$d(0, y) = ||y|| = ||u+v|| < ||u|| + ||v|| = ||x|| + ||x+y|| = d(x, x+y).$$

Therefore, by Theorem 8,  $d \notin \mathcal{M}^{\vee}(X)$  also holds.

**Remark 11** To be more concrete, note that if for instance  $X = \mathbb{R}^2$ , and moreover u = (1, 0) and v = (0, 1), then

$$u + v = (1, 1) \neq (0, 0)$$
 and  $||u + v|| = \sqrt{2} < 2 = ||u|| + ||v||.$ 

**Theorem 12** Suppose that  $\varphi$  is an injective function of a group X to a normed space Y. And, for any  $x, y \in X$ , define

$$d(x, y) = \| \varphi(x) - \varphi(y) \|.$$

Then, d is a metric on X such that

(1)  $d \in \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}(X)$  if and only if  $\| \phi(y) - \phi(0) \| \le \| \phi(x+y) - \phi(x) \|$  for all  $x, y \in X$ ,

 $\begin{array}{ll} (2) & d \in \mathcal{M}^{\vee}(X) \ \ \textit{if and only if} \ \ \| \ \phi \left( x + y \right) - \phi \left( x \right) \| \ \leq \ \| \ \phi \left( y \right) - \phi \left( 0 \right) \| \ \ \textit{for} \\ \textit{all} \ \ x, \ y \in X. \end{array}$ 

**Proof.** To prove (1), note that by Theorem 7 and the definition of d we have  $d \in \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}(X)$  if and only if

$$d(0, y) \le d(x, x+y), \qquad \text{i.e.}, \qquad \left\| \varphi(0) - \varphi(x) \right\| \le \left\| \varphi(x) - \varphi(x+y) \right\|$$

for all  $x, y \in X$ . Therefore, (1) is true.

Now, as an immediate consequence of this theorem, we can also state

**Corollary 1** Under the assumptions of Theorem 12, we have  $d \in \mathcal{M}^*(X)$  if and only if  $\| \phi(x+y) - \phi(x) \| = \| \phi(y) - \phi(0) \|$  for all  $x, y \in X$ .

Remark 12 Note that in the above results, because of

$$d(x, y) = \left\| \varphi(x) - \varphi(y) \right\| = \left\| \varphi(x) - \varphi(0) - \left( \varphi(y) - \varphi(0) \right) \right\|,$$

we may assume, without a genuine loss of generality, that  $\varphi(0) = 0$ .

Moreover, by using the notation

$$\Delta_{y} \phi(x) = \phi(x+y) - \phi(x)$$

for all  $x, y \in X$ , the definition of d and the condition of Corollary 1 can be reformulated in the forms that

$$d(x, y) = \left\| \Delta_{x} \phi(0) - \Delta_{y} \phi(0) \right\| \quad \text{and} \quad \left\| \Delta_{y} \phi(0) \right\| = \min_{x \in X} \left\| \Delta_{y} \phi(x) \right\|$$

for all  $x, y \in X$ .

From Corollary 1, it is clear that in particular we also have

**Corollary 2** If in addition to the assumptions of Theorem 12, the function  $\varphi$  is additive, then  $d \in \mathcal{M}^*(X)$ .

**Remark 13** In this respect, it is noteworthy that if  $\varphi$  is a function of a group X to a normed space Y such that

$$\left\| \, \phi \left( x+y \right) - \phi \left( x \right) \right\| \leq \left\| \, \phi \left( y \right) \right\|$$

for all  $x, y \in X$ , then by writing -u in place of x and u + v in place of y we obtain

$$\left\| \phi\left(\nu\right) - \phi\left(-\mathfrak{u}\right) \right\| \leq \left\| \phi\left(\mathfrak{u} + \nu\right) \right\|$$

for all  $u, v \in X$ .

Therefore, if in particular  $\varphi$  is odd, then we have

$$\left\| \phi\left(\mathfrak{u}\right) + \phi\left(\nu\right) \right\| \leq \left\| \phi\left(\mathfrak{u} + \nu\right) \right\|$$

for all  $u, v \in X$ . (Note that the latter property already implies that  $\varphi(0) = 0$  and  $\varphi$  is odd.)

Moreover, if in particular Y is an inner product space, then by a basic theorem of Maksa and Volkmann [14], we can state that  $\varphi$  is additive. (For some closely related results, see [6, 11, 15, 29, 30, 8, 27, 28].)

Concerning Theorem 12, it is also worth mentioning that Makai [13] proved that there exists a nowhere continuous additive function  $\varphi$  of  $\mathbb{R}$  to itself such that  $\varphi = \varphi^{-1}$ . (For a more general result, see Kuzcma [10, p. 293].)

However, it is now more important to note that, by using Theorem 12, we can also prove the following

**Theorem 13** If  $\phi$  is an injective function of  $\mathbb{R}$  to a normed space Y such that

$$\lim_{x \to -\infty} \, \phi \left( x \right) = \alpha \qquad \quad \text{and} \qquad \quad \lim_{x \to +\infty} \, \phi \left( x \right) = \beta$$

with  $\alpha, \beta \in Y$  such that  $\|\alpha - \phi(0)\| < \|\alpha - \beta\|$ , and

$$d(x, y) = \left\| \varphi(x) - \varphi(y) \right\|$$

for all  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ , then d is a metric on  $\mathbb{R}$  such that

$$\mathbf{d} \notin \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}(\mathbb{R}) \cup \mathcal{M}^{\vee}(\mathbb{R})$$
.

**Proof.** To prove the latter statement, note that if  $d \in \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}(\mathbb{R})$ , then by Theorem 12 we have

$$\left\| \, \phi \left( y \right) - \phi \left( 0 \right) \, \right\| \, \leq \, \left\| \, \phi \left( \, x + y \, \right) - \phi \left( x \right) \, \right\|$$

for all  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ . Hence, by letting x tend to  $+\infty$ , we can infer that

$$\left\| \phi(\mathbf{y}) - \phi(\mathbf{0}) \right\| \leq \mathbf{0},$$

and thus  $\varphi(y) = \varphi(0)$  for all  $y \in \mathbb{R}$ . This contradiction proves that  $d \notin \mathcal{M}^{\wedge}(\mathbb{R})$ .

While, if  $d \in \mathcal{M}^{\vee}(\mathbb{R})$ , then by Theorem 12 we have

$$\left\| \, \phi \left( x + y \, \right) - \phi \left( x \right) \, \right\| \, \leq \, \left\| \, \phi \left( y \right) - \phi \left( 0 \right) \, \right\|$$

for all  $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ . Hence, by letting y tend to  $-\infty$ , we can infer that

$$\| \alpha - \varphi(x) \| \le \| \alpha - \varphi(0) \|,$$

for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ . Hence, by letting x tend to  $+\infty$ , we can infer that

$$\left\| \alpha - \beta \right\| \le \left\| \alpha - \phi(0) \right\|$$

This contradiction proves that  $d \notin \mathcal{M}^{\vee}(\mathbb{R})$ .

Remark 14 To be more concrete, note that if for instance

$$\varphi(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}/(1+|\mathbf{x}|)$$

for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ , then  $\phi$  is a strictly increasing function of  $\mathbb{R}$  to itself such that  $\phi(0) = 0$ ,

$$\alpha = \lim_{x \to -\infty} \, \phi(x) = -1$$
 and  $\beta = \lim_{x \to +\infty} \, \phi(x) = 1$ .

 $\mathrm{Therefore,} \ \left| \, \alpha - \phi \left( 0 \right) \right| = 1 < 2 = \left| \, \alpha - \beta \, \right|.$ 

### Acknowledgement

The work of the author has been supported by the Hungarian Scientific Research Fund (OTKA) Grant K-111651.

Moreover, the author is indebted to Zsolt Páles for an observation leading to some shortenings of the proofs in Section 2.

### References

- G. Birkhoff, Lattice Theory, Amer. Math. Soc. Colloq. Publ., 25, Providence, RI, 1967.
- [2] T.S. Blyth, M.F. Janowitz, *Residuation Theory*, Pergamon Press, Oxford, 1972.
- [3] S. Buglyó, Á. Száz, A more important Galois connection between distance functions and inequality relations, *Sci. Ser. A Math. Sci. (N.S.)*, 18 (2009), 17–38.
- [4] B. A. Davey, H. A. Priestley, Introduction to Lattices and Order, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2002.
- [5] K. Denecke, M. Erné, S. L. Wismath (Eds.) Galois Connections and Applications, Kluwer Academic Publisher, Dordrecht, 2004.
- [6] P. Fischer, Gy. Muszély, On some new generalizations of the functional equation of Cauchy, *Canadian Math. Bull.*, **10** (1967), 197–205.
- [7] B. Ganter, R. Wille, Formal Concept Analysis, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1999.
- [8] R. Ger, Fischer-Muszély additivity on Abelian groups, Comment Math., Tomus Specialis in Honorem Juliani Musielak (2004), 83–96.
- [9] G. Gierz, K. H. Hofmann, K. Keimel, J. D. Lawson, M. Mislove, D. S. Scott, A Compendium of Continuous Lattices, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1980.
- [10] M. Kuczma, An Introduction to the Theory of Functional Equations and Inequalities, Państwowe Wydawnictwo Naukowe, Warszawa, 1985.
- [11] S. Kurepa, On P. Volkmann's paper, *Glasnik Mat.*, **22** (1987), 371–374.
- [12] J. Lambek, Some Galois connections in elementary number theory, J. Number Theory, 47 (1994), 371–377.
- [13] I. Makai, Über invertierbare Lösungen der additive Cauchy-Functionalgleichung, Publ. Math. Debrecen, 16 (1969), 239–243.

- [14] Gy. Maksa, P. Volkmann, Characterizations of group homomorphisms having values in an inner product space, *Publ. Math. Debrecen*, 56 (2000), 197–200.
- [15] P. Schöpf, Solutions of  $|| f(\xi + \eta) || = || f(\xi) + f(\eta) ||$ , Math. Pannon. 8 (1997), 117–127.
- [16] A. Száz, Preseminormed spaces, Publ. Math. Debrecen, **30** (1983), 217–224.
- [17] A. Száz, A Galois connection between distance functions and inequality relations, *Math. Bohem.*, **127** (2002), 437–448.
- [18] A. Száz, Galois-type connections on power sets and their applications to relators, *Tech. Rep., Inst. Math., Univ. Debrecen*, 2005/2, 38 pp.
- [19] A. Száz, Supremum properties of Galois-type connections, Comment. Math. Univ. Carolin., 47 (2006), 569–583.
- [20] A. Száz, An instructive treatment of convergence, closure and orthogonality in semi-inner product spaces, *Tech. Rep., Inst. Math., Univ. Debrecen*, 2006/2, 29 pp.
- [21] A. Száz, Galois type connections and closure operations on preordered sets, Acta Math. Univ. Comen., 78 (2009), 1–21.
- [22] A. Száz, A common generalization of the postman, radial, and river metrics, Rostock. Math. Kollog., 67 (2012), 89–125.
- [23] A. Száz, A particular Galois connection between relations and set functions, Acta Univ. Sapientiae, Math., 6 (2014), 73–91.
- [24] A. Száz, Galois and Pataki connections on generalized ordered sets, Tech. Rep., Inst. Math., Univ. Debrecen, 2014/3, 27 pp.
- [25] A. Száz, Remarks and Problems at the Conference on Inequalities and Applications, Hajdúszoboszló, Hungary, 2014, Tech. Rep., Inst. Math., Univ. Debrecen, 2014/5, 12 pp.
- [26] A. Száz, The closure-interior Galois connection and its applications to relational inclusions and equations, *Tech. Rep., Inst. Math., Univ. Debrecen*, **2015/2**, 40 pp.

- [27] Á. Száz, Generalization of a theorem of Maksa and Volkmann on additive functions, *Tech. Rep.*, *Inst. Math.*, *Univ. Debrecen*, **1016/5**, 6 pp. (An improved and enlarged version is available from the author.)
- [28] Á. Száz, Remarks and problems at the Conference on Inequalities and Applications, Hajdúszoboszló, Hungary, 2016, Tech. Rep., Inst. Math., Univ. Debrecen, 2016/9, 34 pp.
- [29] Jacek Tabor, Józef Tabor, 19. Remark (Solution of the 7. Problem posed by K. Nikodem.), Aequationes Math., 61 (2001), 307–309.
- [30] Jacek Tabor, Stability of the Fisher–Muszély functional equation, Publ. Math. Debrecen, 62 (2003), 205–211.

Received: February 2, 2017



DOI: 10.1515/ausm-2017-0028

# Does another Euclidean plane exist other than the parasphere?

Endre Székely Independent researcher ORCID ID: 0000-0001-9724-3700 HUNGARY, Budapest, 1132 Csandy street 8. email: ndree1230gmail.com

**Abstract.** It is shown that for the question of the title the answer is yes. We construct a plane in the hyperbolic space which is Euclidean.

Let us use the symbols on the Figure 9. of Bolyai's Appendix [1] and take a fourth plane (more precisely a half plane) which intersects the ABNM plane at an angle of  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  and intersects the APM and the BND half planes.

According to the proof of Bolyai, the half planes APM resp. BND are intersecting each other if the angle between the APM and ABNM planes is  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  and the angle between BND and ABNM (half) planes is arbitrarily less than  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ . Then it follows that the intersection lines of the fourth plane with the APM and BND half planes, respectively, are also intersecting each other. This means that in the fourth plane the Euclidean geometry is valid.

To describe the above construction in more detail, let us take a point R on the AM line and a point Z on the BN line such that the RZ line is perpendicular to BN.

<sup>2010</sup> Mathematics Subject Classification: 51M09, 51M15

Key words and phrases: hyperbolic plane, Euclidean geometry



Take a plane containing the RZ line, which intersects the ABNM plane at  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  angle ( $\delta$  plane). Take a half plane containing AM intersecting the ABNM plane at  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  angle (this will be denoted as AMP plane or  $\beta$  plane), and a half plane containing BN, which intersects the ABNM plane at an angle less than  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  (BND plane or  $\alpha$  plane). Then, according to Bolyais proof, the two half planes ( $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  half plane) intersect each other and the plane through RZ ( $\delta$  plane) intersects the other two, and the intersection lines of  $\delta$  plane with the  $\beta$  plane and  $\alpha$  plane, respectively, also intersect each other while the  $\alpha$  half planes dihedral angle with the AMBN plane less then  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ . (As Bolyai has proven, if the  $\alpha$  half plane intersects the ABNM plane at an angle arbitrarily smaller than  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ , then the half planes  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  intersect each other.) Then it follows: in the  $\delta$  plane the Euclidean geometry seems to be valid. The intersection line of the  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  half planes does not intersect the ABNM plane, because the AM and BN lines are parallel.

Let us denote the intersection line of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  half planes by K. The intersection lines of  $\delta$  plane with the  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  half planes, respectively, both intersect K, because as Bolyai implicitly uses the statement: if there are two parallel lines in a plane and from one of the two we draw a perpendicular line in the plane, this latter line will intersect the other line. Also, K is parallel with AM and BN. If K would intersect AM or BN, then these two latter lines would also intersect each other.

Similar results were published recently by Miroslava Antic [2]. A very interesting related paper is published by Zoltán Győrfy [3].

### Acknowledgements

It is a pleasure to express my thanks to my friend Éva Gramiss and to my son Ádám Székely for their constant help while writing this article, to my friend Dr. Zoltán Győrfy for discussing the content of this paper and to my friend Dr. Tamás Szabados for reading the final version of this paper and for his valuable advice. Special gratitude is due to Professor Tibor Weszely, the well-known expert of non-Euclidean geometry for reading an earlier version of this paper.

#### References

- Bolyai János, Appendix, North-Holland Mathematics Studies 138 (1987)
   Ferenc Kárteszi (ed), 80., http://dide.ker.sch.gr/emekerkyra/books/ Bolyai, J%20Theory%20of%20Space.pdf
- Miroslava Antic, The equidistant involution of the hyperbolic plane and two models of the Euclidean plane geometry, *Journal of Geometry* Vol. 04, Issue 2, (2013), 201–212
- [3] Győrfy Zoltán, Az egyenes vonal természetéről Saccheri és az elpaccolt Mennyország (On the nature of the straight line – Saccheri and the missed Heaven), Ponticulus Hungaricus, XVI. évf. 5. (2012), http://members. iif.hu/visontay/ponticulus/rovatok/limes/gyorfi-saccheri.html

Received: April 2, 2017

ACTA UNIV. SAPIENTIAE, MATHEMATICA, 9, 2 (2017) 377-390

DOI: 10.1515/ausm-2017-0029

# Uniqueness of polynomial and differential monomial

Harina P. Waghamore Department of Mathematics, Jnanabharathi Campus, Bangalore University, India email: harinapw@gmail.com, harina@bub.ernet.in

DE GRUYTER

V. Husna Department of Mathematics, Jnanabharathi Campus, Bangalore University, India email: husnav430gmail.com, husnav@bub.ernet.in

**Abstract.** In this paper, we discuss the problem of meromorphic functions sharing small function and present one theorem which extend a result of K. S. Charak and Banarasi Lal [16].

# 1 Introduction and main results

In this paper, a meromorphic function always mean a function which is meromorphic in the whole complex plane.

**Definition 1** Let f(z) and g(z) be nonconstant meromorphic functions,  $a \in \mathbb{C} \cup \{\infty\}$ . We say that f and g share the value  $a \ CM$  if f - a and g - a have the same zeros with the same multiplicities.

<sup>2010</sup> Mathematics Subject Classification: 30D35

Key words and phrases: meromorphic function, sharing values, differential monomial, polynomial

which multiplicity is not counted. Let  $N_{(k}\left(r, \frac{1}{(f-\alpha)}\right)$  be the counting function for zeros of  $f-\alpha$  with multiplicity at least k and  $\overline{N}_{(k}\left(r, \frac{1}{(f-\alpha)}\right)$  the corresponding one for which multiplicity is not counted. Set

$$N_k\left(r,\frac{1}{f-a}\right) = \overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{f-a}\right) + \overline{N}_{(2}\left(r,\frac{1}{f-a}\right) + \ldots + \overline{N}_{(k}\left(r,\frac{1}{f-a}\right).$$

**Definition 3** For two positive integers n, p we define  $\mu_p = \min\{n, p\}$  and  $\mu_p^* = p + 1 - \mu_p$ . Then it is clear that

$$N_p(r, 0; f^n) \le \mu_p N_{\mu_p^*}(r, 0; f).$$

**Definition 4** [17] Let  $z_0$  be a zero of f - a of multiplicity p and a zero of g-a of multiplicity q. We denote by  $\overline{N}_L(r, a; f)$  the counting function of those a-points of f and g where  $p > q \ge 1$ , by  $N_E^{1)}(r, a; f)$  the counting function of those a-points of f and g where p = q = 1 and by  $\overline{N}_E^{(2)}(r, a; f)$  the counting function of those a-points of f and g where p = q = 1 and by  $\overline{N}_E^{(2)}(r, a; f)$  the counting function in these counting functions is counted only once. In the same way we can define  $\overline{N}_L(r, a; g), N_E^{(1)}(r, a; g)$ .

**Definition 5** [18] Let k be a non-negative integer or infinity. For  $a \in \mathbb{C} \cup \{\infty\}$  we denote by  $E_k(a; f)$  the set of all a-points of f, where an a-point of multiplicity m is counted m times if  $m \leq k$  and k + 1 times if m > k. If  $E_k(a; f) = E_k(a; g)$ , we say that f, g share the value a with weight k.

The definition implies that if f, g share a value a with weight k then  $z_0$  is an a-point of f with multiplicity  $\mathfrak{m}(\leq k)$  if and only if it is an a-point of g with multiplicity  $\mathfrak{m}(\leq k)$  and  $z_0$  is an a-point of f with multiplicity  $\mathfrak{m}(> k)$ if and only if it is an a-point of g with multiplicity  $\mathfrak{n}(> k)$ , where  $\mathfrak{m}$  is not necessarily equal to  $\mathfrak{n}$ .

We write f, g share (a, k) to mean that f, g share the value a with weight k. Clearly if f, g share (a, k) then f, g share (a, p) for any integer p,  $0 \le p < k$ . Also we note that f, g share a value a IM or CM if and only if f, g share (a, 0) or  $(a, \infty)$  respectively.

With the notion of weighted sharing of values Lahiri-Sarkar [13] improved the result of Zhang [14]. In [15] Zhang extended the result of Lahiri-Sarkar [13] and replaced the concept of value sharing by small function sharing.

In 2008, Zhang and Lü [12] obtained the following result.
**Theorem A** Let k, n be the positive integers, f be a non-constant meromorphic function, and  $a(\not\equiv 0,\infty)$  be a meromorphic function satisfying T(r, a) = o(T(r, f)) as  $r \to \infty$ . If  $f^n$  and  $f^{(k)}$  share a IM and

$$(2k+6)\Theta(\infty, f) + 4\Theta(0, f) + 2\delta_{2+k}(0, f) > 2k + 12 - n,$$

or  $f^{\mathfrak{n}}$  and  $f^{(k)}$  share a CM and

$$(k+3)\Theta(\infty, f) + 2\Theta(0, f) + \delta_{2+k}(0, f) > k+6-n,$$

then  $f^n = f^{(k)}$ .

In the same paper, T. Zhang and W. Lü asked the following question:

**Question 1** What will happen if  $f^n$  and  $(f^{(k)})^m$  share a meromorphic function  $a(\neq 0, \infty)$  satisfying T(r, a) = o(T(r, f)) as  $r \to \infty$ ?

S. S. Bhoosnurmath and Kabbur [3] proved:

**Theorem B** Let f be a non-constant meromorphic function and  $a (\not\equiv 0, \infty)$  be a meromorphic function satisfying  $T(\mathbf{r}, a) = o(T(\mathbf{r}, f))$  as  $\mathbf{r} \to \infty$ . Let P[f] be a non-constant differential polynomial in f. If f and P[f] share a IM and

$$(2Q+6)\Theta(\infty,f) + (2+3\underline{d}(P))\delta(0,f) > 2Q+2\underline{d}(P) + \overline{d}(P) + 7$$

or if f and P[f] share a CM and

$$3\Theta(\infty, f) + (\underline{d}(P) + 1)\delta(0, f) > 4,$$

then  $f \equiv P[f]$ .

Banerjee and Majumder [2] considered the weighted sharing of  $f^n$  and  $(f^m)^{(k)}$  and proved the following result:

**Theorem C** Let f be a non-constant meromorphic function,  $k, n, m \in N$  and l be a non negative integer. Suppose  $a (\not\equiv 0, \infty)$  be a meromorphic function satisfying T(r, a) = o(T(r, f)) as  $r \to \infty$  such that  $f^n$  and  $(f^m)^{(k)}$  share (a, l). If  $l \geq 2$  and

$$(k+3)\Theta(\infty, f) + (k+4)\Theta(0, f) > 2k+7-n,$$

or l = 1 and

$$\left(k+\frac{7}{2}\right)\Theta(\infty,f)+\left(k+\frac{9}{2}\right)\Theta(0,f)>2k+8-n,$$

or l = 0 and

$$(2k+6)\Theta(\infty, f) + (2k+7)\Theta(0, f) > 4k+13-n,$$

then  $f \equiv (f^m)^{(k)}$ .

In 2015, Kuldeep S. Charak and Banarasi Lal [16] proved the following result:

**Theorem D** Let f be a non-constant meromorphic function, n be a positive integer and  $a (\neq 0, \infty)$  be a meromorphic function satisfying T(r, a) = o(T(r, f)) as  $r \to \infty$ . Let P[f] be a non-constant differential polynomial in f. Suppose f<sup>n</sup> and P[f] share (a, l) such that any one of the following holds: (i) when  $l \ge 2$  and

$$(Q+3)\Theta(\infty,f) + 2\Theta(0,f) + \overline{d}(P)\delta(0,f) > Q + 5 + 2\overline{d}(P) - \underline{d}(P) - n,$$

(ii) when l = 1 and

$$\left(Q+\frac{7}{2}\right)\Theta(\infty,f)+\frac{5}{2}\Theta(0,f)+\overline{d}(P)\delta(0,f)>Q+6+2\overline{d}(P)-\underline{d}(P)-n,$$

(iii) when l = 0 and

$$(2Q+6)\Theta(\infty,f) + 4\Theta(0,f) + 2\overline{d}(P)\delta(0,f) > 2Q + 10 + 4\overline{d}(P) - 2\underline{d}(P) - n.$$
  
Then  $f^n \equiv P[f]$ .

Through the paper we shall assume the following notations. Let

$$\mathcal{P}(\omega) = a_{m+n}\omega^{m+n} + \dots + a_n\omega^n + \dots + a_0 = a_{n+m}\prod_{i=1}^s (\omega - \omega_{p_i})^{p_i}$$

where  $a_j(j = 0, 1, 2, ..., n + m - 1)$ ,  $a_{n+m} \neq 0$  and  $\omega_{p_i}(i = 1, 2, ..., s)$  are distinct finite complex numbers and  $2 \leq s \leq n + m$  and  $p_1, p_2, ..., p_s, s \geq 2, n, m$  and k are all positive integers with  $\sum_{i=1}^{s} p_i = n + m$ . Also let  $p > \max_{p \neq p_i, i=1,...,r} \{p_i\}, r = s - 1$ , where s and r are two positive integers.

Let

$$P(\omega_1) = a_{n+m} \prod_{i=1}^{s-1} (\omega_1 + \omega_p - \omega_{p_i})^{p_i} = b_q \omega_1^q + b_{q-1} \omega_1^{q-1} + \dots + b_0,$$

where  $a_{n+m} = b_q$ ,  $\omega_1 = \omega - \omega_p$ , q = n + m - p. Therefore,  $\mathcal{P}(\omega) = \omega_1^p P(\omega_1)$ . Next we assume

$$\mathsf{P}(\omega_1) = \mathfrak{b}_q \prod_{i=1}^{r} (\omega_1 - \alpha_i)^{\mathfrak{p}_i},$$

where  $\alpha_i = \omega_{p_i} - \omega_p$ , (i = 1, 2, ..., r), be distinct zeros of P( $\omega_1$ ).

In this paper we will prove one theorem which will improve and generalize Theorem D.

**Theorem 1** Let  $k(\geq 1), n(\geq 1), p(\geq 1)$  and  $m(\geq 0)$  be integers and f and  $f_1 = f - \omega_p$  be two nonconstant meromorphic functions and M[f] be a differential monomial of degree  $d_M$  and weight  $\Gamma_M$  and k is the highest derivative in M[f]. Let  $\mathcal{P}(z) = a_{m+n}z^{m+n} + ... + a_nz^n + ... + a_0, a_{m+n} \neq 0$ , be a polynomial in z of degree m+n such that  $\mathcal{P}(f) = f_1^p P(f_1)$ . Also let  $a(z) (\not\equiv 0, \infty)$  be a small function with respect to f. Suppose  $\mathcal{P}(f) - a$  and M[f] - a share (0, 1). If  $l \geq 2$  and

$$(3+2\lambda)\Theta(\infty,f) + \mu_2\delta_{\mu_2^*}(\omega_p,f) + 2d_M\delta_{1+k}(0,f) > 2\Gamma_M + 2\mu_2 + 3 - p \quad (1)$$

or l = 1 and

$$\left(\frac{7}{2} + 2\lambda\right)\Theta(\infty, f) + \frac{1}{2}\Theta(\omega_{p}, f) + \mu_{2}\delta_{\mu_{2}^{*}}(\omega_{p}, f) + 2d_{M}\delta_{1+k}(0, f) >$$

$$2\Gamma_{M} + \mu_{2} + 4 + \frac{(m+n) - 3p}{2}$$

$$(2)$$

or l = 0 and

$$(6+3\lambda)\Theta(\infty,f) + 2\Theta(\omega_{p},f) + \mu_{2}\delta_{\mu_{2}^{*}}(\omega_{p},f) + 3d_{M}\delta_{1+k}(0,f) > 3\Gamma_{M} + \mu_{2} + 8 + 2(m+n) - 3p$$
 (3)

then  $\mathcal{P}(f) \equiv M[f]$ .

Following example shows that in Theorem 1  $a(z) \neq 0$  is essential.

**Example 1** Let us take  $f(z) = e^{Lz}$  where  $L \neq 0, \pm 1$  and  $\mathcal{P}(f) = f^3, M[f] = f^{(2)}$ . Then  $\mathcal{P}(f)$  and M[f] share a = 0 (or,  $\infty$ ). Here  $m = 0, p = n = 1, \omega_p = 0, d_M = 1, \mu_2 = 1, \Gamma_M = 3$  and  $\lambda = 2$ . Also  $\Theta(\infty; f) = 1 = \Theta(0; f)$  and  $\delta_p(0; f) = 1, \forall q \in \mathbb{N}$ . Thus we see that the deficiency conditions stated in Theorem 1 are satisfied but  $\mathcal{P}(f) \neq M[f]$ . The next example shows that the deficiency conditions stated in Theorem 1 are not necessary.

**Example 2** Let f(z) = Ccosz + Dsinz,  $CD \neq 0$ . Then  $\overline{N}(r, f) = S(r, f)$  and

$$\overline{N}(\mathbf{r},\mathbf{0};\mathbf{f}) = \overline{N}\left(\mathbf{r},\frac{\mathbf{C}+\mathrm{i}\mathbf{D}}{\mathbf{C}-\mathrm{i}\mathbf{D}};\mathbf{e}^{2\mathrm{i}z}\right) \sim T(\mathbf{r},\mathbf{f}).$$

Here  $m = 0, p = n = 1, \omega_p = 0, d_M = 1, \mu_2 = 1, \Gamma_M = 4k + 1$  and  $\lambda = 4k$ . Again  $\Theta(\infty, f) = 1$  and  $\Theta(0, f) = \delta_p(0, f) = 0$ . Let m = 0, hence  $\mathcal{P}(f) = f$ .

Therefore it is clear that  $M[f] = f^{(4k)}$ , for  $k \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $\mathcal{P}(f)$  share  $\mathfrak{a}(z)$  and the deficiency conditions in Theorem 1 are not satisfied, but  $\mathcal{P}(f) \equiv M$ .

### 2 Lemmas

Lemma 1 [17] For the differential monomial M[f],

 $N_p(r,0;M[f]) \le d_M N_{p+k}(r,0;g) + \lambda \overline{N}(r,\infty,f) + S(r,f).$ 

**Lemma 2** [17] Let F and G share (1, l). Then

$$\overline{N}_L(r,1;F) \leq \frac{1}{l+1}\overline{N}(r,\infty;F) + \frac{1}{l+1}\overline{N}(r,0;F) + S(r,F) \text{ if } l \geq 1,$$

and

$$\overline{N}_L(r,1;F) \leq \overline{N}(r,\infty;F) + \overline{N}(r,0;F) + S(r,F) \text{ if } l = 0.$$

**Lemma 3** Let f be a non-constant meromorphic function and a(z) be a small function of f. Let us define  $F = \frac{\mathcal{P}(f)}{a} = \frac{f_1^p P(f_1)}{a}$  and  $G = \frac{M[f]}{a}$ . Then  $FG \neq 1$ . Proof. On contrary suppose  $FG \equiv 1$  i.e

$$f_1^p P(f_1) M[f] = a^2.$$

From above it is clear that the function f can't have any zero and poles. Therefore  $\overline{N}(r, 0; f) = S(r, f) = \overline{N}(r, \infty; f)$ . So by the First Fundamental Theorem and Lemma 1, we have

$$\begin{split} (m+n+d_M) T(r,f) &= T\left(r,\frac{a^2}{f_1^p P(f_1) f^{d_M}}\right) + S(r,f) \leq T\left(r,\frac{M[f]}{f^{d_M}}\right) + S(r,f) \\ &\leq m\left(r,\frac{M[f]}{f^{d_M}}\right) + N\left(r,\frac{M[f]}{f^{d_M}}\right) + S(r,f) \\ &\leq N\left(r,\frac{M[f]}{f^{d_M}}\right) + S(r,f) \end{split}$$

Then using Lemma 2 and from above inequality, we get

$$(\mathfrak{m}+\mathfrak{n}+\mathfrak{d}_{\mathsf{M}})\mathsf{T}(\mathfrak{r},\mathfrak{f}) \leq \mathfrak{d}_{\mathsf{M}}\mathsf{N}(\mathfrak{r},\mathfrak{0};\mathfrak{f}) + \lambda\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathfrak{r},\mathfrak{f}) + \mathsf{S}(\mathfrak{r},\mathfrak{f}) \leq \mathsf{S}(\mathfrak{r},\mathfrak{f}),$$

which is not possible.

**Lemma 4** [17] Let f be a non-constant meromorphic function and a(z) be a small function of f. Let  $F = \frac{\mathcal{P}(f)}{a} = \frac{f_1^{P}P(f_1)}{a}$  and  $G = \frac{M[f]}{a}$  such that F and G shares  $(1, \infty)$ . Then one of the following cases holds: 1.  $T(r) \leq N_2(r, 0; F) + N_2(r, 0; G) + \overline{N}(r, \infty; F) + \overline{N}(r, \infty; G) + \overline{N}_L(r, \infty; F) + \overline{N}_L(r, \infty; G) + S(r),$ 2.  $F \equiv G,$ 3.  $FG \equiv 1.$ where  $T(r) = \max\{T(r, F), T(r, G)\}$  and  $S(r) = o(T(r)), r \in I, I$  is a set of infinite linear measure of  $r \in \{0, \infty\}$ .

### 3 Proof of the Theorem

#### Proof.

Let  $F = \frac{\mathcal{P}(f)}{a} = \frac{f_1^{p}P(f_1)}{a}$  and  $G = \frac{M[f]}{a}$ . Then  $F - 1 = \frac{f_1^{p}P(f_1) - a}{a}$  and  $G - 1 = \frac{M[f] - a}{a}$ . Since  $\mathcal{P}(f)$  and M[f] share (a, l), it follows that F and G share (1, l), except the zeros and poles of a(z).

Define

$$\psi = \left(\frac{F''}{F'} - \frac{2F'}{F-1}\right) - \left(\frac{G''}{G'} - \frac{2G'}{G-1}\right).$$
(4)

We consider the following cases:

**Case 1.** When  $\psi \neq 0$ . Then from (4), we have  $\mathfrak{m}(r, \psi) = S(r, f)$ . By the second fundamental theorem of Nevanlinna, we have

$$T(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{F}) + T(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{G}) \le 2\overline{N}(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{f}) + \overline{N}\left(\mathbf{r}, \frac{1}{\mathbf{F}}\right) + \overline{N}\left(\mathbf{r}, \frac{1}{\mathbf{F}-1}\right) + \overline{N}\left(\mathbf{r}, \frac{1}{\mathbf{G}}\right) + \overline{N}\left(\mathbf{r}, \frac{1}{\mathbf{G}-1}\right) - N_0\left(\mathbf{r}, \frac{1}{\mathbf{F}'}\right) - N_0\left(\mathbf{r}, \frac{1}{\mathbf{G}'}\right) + S(\mathbf{r}, \mathbf{f}),$$
(5)

where  $N_0(r, \frac{1}{F'})$  denotes the counting function of the zeros of F' which are not the zeros of F(F-1) and  $N_0(r, \frac{1}{G'})$  denotes the counting function of the zeros

of  $G^{\,\prime}$  which are not the zeros of G(G-1).

Subcase 1.1. When  $l \ge 1$ . Then from (4), we have,

$$\begin{split} N_E^{1)}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) &\leq N\left(r,\frac{1}{\psi}\right) + S(r,f) \leq T(r,\psi) + S(r,f) = N(r,\psi) + S(r,f) \\ &\leq \overline{N}(r,F) + \overline{N}_{(2}\left(r,\frac{1}{F}\right) + \overline{N}_{(2}\left(r,\frac{1}{G}\right) + \overline{N}_L\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) \\ &\quad + \overline{N}_L\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) + N_0\left(r,\frac{1}{F'}\right) + N_0\left(r,\frac{1}{G'}\right) + S(r,f), \end{split}$$

and so

$$\begin{split} \overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) &+ \overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) = N_{E}^{1)}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + \overline{N}_{E}^{(2)}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) \\ &+ \overline{N}_{L}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + \overline{N}_{L}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) + \overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) + S(r,f) \\ &\leq \overline{N}(r,f) + \overline{N}_{(2)}\left(r,\frac{1}{F}\right) + \overline{N}_{(2)}\left(r,\frac{1}{G}\right) + 2\overline{N}_{L}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + 2\overline{N}_{L}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) \\ &+ \overline{N}_{E}^{(2)}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + \overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) + N_{0}\left(r,\frac{1}{F'}\right) + N_{0}\left(r,\frac{1}{G'}\right) + S(r,f). \end{split}$$
(6)

For  $l \geq 2$ , we have

$$\begin{split} &2\overline{N}_L\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right)+2\overline{N}_L\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right)+\overline{N}_E^{(2)}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right)+\overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right)\\ &\leq N\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right)+S(r,f). \end{split}$$

Thus from (6), we obtain

$$\overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + \overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) \leq \overline{N}(r,f) + \overline{N}_{(2}\left(r,\frac{1}{F}\right) + \overline{N}_{(2}\left(r,\frac{1}{G}\right) + N\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) + N_{0}\left(r,\frac{1}{F'}\right) + N_{0}\left(r,\frac{1}{G'}\right) + S(r,f).$$

$$(7)$$

Now from Lemma 1, (5) and (7) we obtain

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{T}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{F}) &\leq 3\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) + \overline{\mathsf{N}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{F}}\right) + \overline{\mathsf{N}}_{(2}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{F}}\right) + \overline{\mathsf{N}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{G}}\right) + \overline{\mathsf{N}}_{(2}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{G}}\right) + \mathsf{S}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) \\ &\leq 3\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) + 2\overline{\mathsf{N}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{F}}\right) + \mathsf{N}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{G}}\right) + \mathsf{S}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) \\ &\leq 3\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) + \mu_2\mathsf{N}_{\mu_2^*}(\mathsf{r},\omega_\mathsf{p};\mathsf{f}) + 2\mathsf{d}_{\mathsf{M}}\mathsf{N}_{1+\mathsf{k}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{f}}\right) + 2\lambda\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) + \mathsf{S}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) \end{split}$$

$$\begin{split} (n+m)T(r,f) &\leq (3+2\lambda)\overline{N}(r,f) + \mu_2 N_{\mu_2^*}(r,\omega_p;f) + (m+n-p)T(r,f) \\ &+ 2d_M N_{1+k}\left(r,\frac{1}{f}\right) + S(r,f) \end{split}$$

$$\begin{split} &\{(3+2\lambda)\Theta(\infty,f)+\mu_{2}\delta_{\mu_{2}^{*}}(r,\omega_{p};f)+2d_{M}\delta_{1+k}(0,f)\}T(r,f)\\ &\leq (3+2\lambda+2\mu_{1}+m+n-2p+2d_{M})T(r,f)+S(r,f). \end{split}$$

$$\begin{split} \{(3+2\lambda)\Theta(\infty,f)+\mu_2\delta_{\mu_2^*}(0,f)+2d_M\delta_{1+k}(0,f)-\varepsilon\}T(r,f)\\ &\leq (2\Gamma_M+3+2\lambda+2\mu_2-p)T(r,f)+S(r,f). \end{split}$$

which violates (1). Next, consider the case when l = 1. First note that

$$\overline{N}_{L}(r,\frac{1}{F-1}) \leq \frac{1}{2}N(r,\frac{1}{F'}|F\neq 0) \leq \frac{1}{2}\overline{N}(r,F) + \frac{1}{2}\overline{N}(r,\frac{1}{F}),$$
(8)

when  $N\left(r, \frac{1}{F'}|F \neq 0\right)$  denotes the zeros of F', that are not the zeros of F. From (4) and (8), we have

$$2\overline{N}_{L}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + 2\overline{N}_{L}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + \overline{N}_{E}^{(2)}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + \overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right)$$

$$\leq N\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) + \overline{N}_{L}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + S(r,f) \qquad (9)$$

$$\leq N\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) + \frac{1}{2}\overline{N}(r,F) + \frac{1}{2}\overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{F}\right) + S(r,f)$$

Thus, from (5) and (9) , we have

$$\overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + \overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) \leq \overline{N}(r,f) + \overline{N}_{(2}\left(r,\frac{1}{F}\right) + \overline{N}_{(2}\left(r,\frac{1}{G}\right) + \frac{1}{2}\overline{N}(r,F) + \frac{1}{2}\overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{F}\right) + T(r,G) + N_{0}\left(r,\frac{1}{F'}\right) + N_{0}\left(r,\frac{1}{G'}\right) + S(r,f).$$

$$(10)$$

From Lemma 1, (5) and (10) we obtain

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{T}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{F}) &\leq 3\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{F}) + \overline{\mathsf{N}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{F}}\right) + \overline{\mathsf{N}}_{(2}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{F}}\right) + \overline{\mathsf{N}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{G}}\right) + \overline{\mathsf{N}}_{(2}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{G}}\right) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2}\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{F}) + \frac{1}{2}\overline{\mathsf{N}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{F}}\right) + \mathsf{S}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) \\ &\leq \frac{7}{2}\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) + 2\overline{\mathsf{N}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{F}}\right) + 2\overline{\mathsf{N}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{G}}\right) + \frac{1}{2}\overline{\mathsf{N}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{F}}\right) + \mathsf{S}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) \\ &\leq \frac{7}{2}\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) + 2\overline{\mathsf{N}}\left(\mathsf{r},\omega_{\mathsf{p}};\mathsf{f}\right) + (\mathsf{m}+\mathsf{n}-\mathsf{p})\mathsf{T}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) + 2\mathsf{d}_{\mathsf{M}}\mathsf{N}_{1+\mathsf{k}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{f}}\right) \\ &\quad + 2\lambda\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) + \frac{1}{2}\{\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\omega_{\mathsf{p}};\mathsf{f}) + (\mathsf{m}+\mathsf{n}-\mathsf{p})\mathsf{T}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) + \mathsf{S}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f})\} \\ &\quad (\mathsf{m}+\mathsf{n})\mathsf{T}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) \leq \left(\frac{7}{2}+2\lambda\right)\left(1-\Theta(\infty,\mathsf{f})\right) + \mu_{2}(1-\delta_{\mu_{2}^{*}}(\omega_{\mathsf{p}},\mathsf{f})) + \frac{3}{2}(\mathsf{m}+\mathsf{n}-\mathsf{p}) \\ &\quad + 2\mathsf{d}_{\mathsf{M}}(1-\delta_{1+\mathsf{k}}(\mathsf{0},\mathsf{f})) + \frac{1}{2}(1-\Theta(\omega_{\mathsf{p}},\mathsf{f})) + \mathsf{S}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}). \\ &\left\{\left(\frac{7}{2}+2\lambda\right)\Theta(\infty,\mathsf{f}) + \mu_{2}\delta_{\mu_{2}^{*}}(\omega_{\mathsf{p}},\mathsf{f})\right) + 2\mathsf{d}_{\mathsf{M}}\delta_{1+\mathsf{k}}(\mathsf{0},\mathsf{f}) + \frac{1}{2}\Theta(\omega_{\mathsf{p}};\mathsf{f})\right\} \\ &\leq \left(\frac{7}{2}+2\lambda+\mu_{2}+\frac{3}{2}(\mathsf{m}+\mathsf{n}-\mathsf{p}) + 2\mathsf{d}_{\mathsf{M}} + \frac{1}{2}-\mathsf{m}-\mathsf{n}+\varepsilon\right)\mathsf{T}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) + \mathsf{S}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) \\ &\leq (2\Gamma_{\mathsf{M}}+4+\mu_{2}+\frac{1}{2}\mathsf{m}+\frac{1}{2}\mathsf{n}-\frac{3}{2}\mathsf{p})\mathsf{T}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) + \mathsf{S}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) \end{split}$$

which violates (2).

Subcase 1.2. When l = 0. Then, we have

$$\begin{split} N_E^{1)}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) &= N_E^{1)}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) + S(r,f),\\ \overline{N}_E^{(2)}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) &= \overline{N}_E^{(2)}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) + S(r,f), \end{split}$$

and also from (4), we have

$$\begin{split} \overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + \overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) &\leq N_{E}^{11}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + \overline{N}_{E}^{(2)}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) \\ &+ \overline{N}_{L}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + \overline{N}_{L}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) + \overline{N}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) + S(r,f) \\ &\leq N_{E}^{11}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + \overline{N}_{L}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + N\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) + S(r,f) \\ &\leq \overline{N}(r,F) + \overline{N}_{(2)}\left(r,\frac{1}{F}\right) + \overline{N}_{(2)}\left(r,\frac{1}{G}\right) + 2\overline{N}_{L}\left(r,\frac{1}{F-1}\right) + \overline{N}_{L}\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) \\ &+ N\left(r,\frac{1}{G-1}\right) + N_{0}\left(r,\frac{1}{F'}\right) + N_{0}\left(r,\frac{1}{G'}\right) + S(r,f) \end{split}$$
(11)

From Lemma 2, (5) and (9), we obtain

$$\begin{split} \mathsf{T}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{F}) &\leq 3\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{F}) + \overline{\mathsf{N}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{F}}\right) + \overline{\mathsf{N}}_{(2}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{F}}\right) + \overline{\mathsf{N}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{G}}\right) + \overline{\mathsf{N}}_{(2}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{G}}\right) \\ &\quad + 2\overline{\mathsf{N}}_{\mathsf{L}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{F}-1}\right) + \overline{\mathsf{N}}_{\mathsf{L}}\left(\mathsf{r},\frac{1}{\mathsf{G}-1}\right) + \mathsf{S}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) \\ &\leq 6\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) + \mu_2\mathsf{N}_{\mu_2^*}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{0};\mathsf{f}) + (\mathsf{m}+\mathsf{n}-\mathsf{p})\mathsf{T}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) + 3(\mathsf{d}_{\mathsf{M}}\mathsf{N}_{1+\mathsf{k}}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{0};\mathsf{f}) \\ &\quad + \lambda\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f})) + 2\{\overline{\mathsf{N}}(\mathsf{r},\omega_{\mathsf{p}};\mathsf{f}) + (\mathsf{m}+\mathsf{n}-\mathsf{p})\mathsf{T}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f})\} + \mathsf{S}(\mathsf{r},\mathsf{f}) \end{split}$$

$$\begin{split} (\mathfrak{m}+\mathfrak{n})T(r,f) &\leq (6+3\lambda)(1-\Theta(\infty,f))+\mu_2(1-\delta_{\mu_2^*}(r,f))+3(\mathfrak{m}+\mathfrak{n}-p)\\ &+ 3d_M(1-\delta_{1+k}(0,f))+2(1-\Theta(\omega_p,f))+S(r,f). \end{split}$$

$$\begin{split} &\{(6+3\lambda)\Theta(\infty,f)+\mu_{2}\delta_{\mu_{2}^{*}}(r,f)+3d_{M}\delta_{1+k}(0,f)+2\Theta(\omega_{p},f)-\varepsilon\}T(r,f)\\ &\leq (6+3\lambda+\mu_{2}+3m+3n-3p+3d_{M}+2-m-n)T(r,f)+S(r,f)\\ &\leq (3\Gamma_{M}+\mu_{2}+2m+2n-3p+8-\varepsilon)T(r,f)+S(r,f) \end{split}$$

which violates (3).

Case 2. Let  $H \equiv 0$ . On Integration we get

$$\frac{1}{G-1} \equiv \frac{A}{F-1} + B,$$

where  $A(\neq 0)$ , B are complex constants.

It is clear that F and G share  $(1, \infty)$ . Also by construction of F and G we see that F and G share  $(\infty, 0)$  also.

So using Lemma 1 and condition (2), we obtain

$$\begin{split} N_{2}(r,0;F) + N_{2}(r,0;G) + N(r,\infty;F) + N(r,\infty;G) + N_{L}(r,\infty;F) \\ &+ \overline{N}_{L}(r,\infty;G) + S(r) \leq 2\overline{N}(r,0;F) + 2\overline{N}(r,0;G) + 3\overline{N}(r,\infty;f) + S(r) \\ &\leq 2(\overline{N}(r,\omega_{p};f) + (m+n-p)T(r,f)) + 2(d_{M}N_{1+k}\left(r,\frac{1}{f}\right) + \lambda\overline{N}(r,f)) \\ &+ 3\overline{N}(r,f) + S(r) \leq 2(1 - \Theta(\omega_{p},f)) + 2d_{M}(1 - \delta_{1+k}(0,f)) \\ &+ (3 + 2\lambda)(1 - \Theta(\infty,f)) + S(r) + (m+n-p)T(r,f) \\ &\leq (3 + 2\lambda + 2d_{M} + 2 + m + n - p) - (3 + 2\lambda + 2d_{M} + 2 - p)T(r,f) + S(r) \\ &\leq (m+n)T(r,f) + S(r) < T(r,F) + S(r). \end{split}$$
(12)

Hence inequality (1) of Lemma 4 does not hold. Again in view of Lemma 3, we get  $FG \neq 1$ . Therefore  $F \equiv G$  i.e.,  $\mathcal{P}(f) \equiv M[f]$ .

### Acknowledgement

The author (VH) is greatful to the University Grants Commission(UGC), New Delhi, India for supporting her research work by providing her with a Maulana Azad National Fellowship(MANF).

### References

- Banerjee, Abhijit, Meromorphic functions sharing one value. Int. J. Math. Math. Sci., 22 (2005), 3587–3598.
- [2] A. Banerjee, S. Majumder, Some uniqueness results related to meromorphic function that share a small function with its derivative. *Math. Rep.* (Bucur.), 16 (66) (2014), no. 1, 95–111.
- [3] Subhas S. Bhoosnurmath, Smita R. Kabbur, On entire and meromorphic functions that share one small function with their differential polynomial, *Int. J. Anal.*, (2013), Art. ID 926340, 8 pp.
- [4] S. S. Bhoosnurmath, Anupama J. Patil, On the growth and value distribution of meromorphic functions and their differential polynomials, J. Indian Math. Soc. (N.S.), 74 (2007), no. 3-4, 167–184 (2008).

- [5] W. K. Hayman, Meromorphic functions, Oxford Mathematical Monographs Clarendon Press, Oxford 1964 xiv+191 pp.
- [6] H. -X. Yi, Uniqueness of meromorphic functions and a question of C. C. Yang. Complex Var. Theory and Appl., 14 (1990), no. 1–4, 169–176.
- [7] H. -X. Yi, Uniqueness theorems for meromorphic functions whose nth derivatives share the same 1-points, Complex Var. Theory and Appl., 34 (1997), no. 4, 421–436.
- [8] H. Huang, B. Huang, Uniqueness of meromorphic functions concerning differential monomials, Appl. Math. (Irvine), 2 (2011), no. 2, 230–235.
- [9] N. Li, L.-Z. Yang, Meromorphic function that shares one small function with its differential polynomial, *Kyungpook Math. J.*, **50** (2010), no. 3, 447–454.
- [10] E. Mues, N. Steinmetz, Meromorphe Funktionen, die mit ihrer Ableitung Werte teilen. (German) Manuscripta Math., 29 (1979), no. 2-4, 195–206.
- [11] C.-C. Yang, H.-X. Yi, Uniqueness theory of meromorphic functions. Mathematics and its Applications, 557. Kluwer Academic Publishers Group, Dordrecht, 2003. viii+569 pp. ISBN: 1-4020-1448-1
- [12] T. Zhang, W. Lü, Notes on a meromorphic function sharing one small function with its derivative, *Complex Var. Elliptic Equ.*, **53** (2008), no. 9, 857–867.
- [13] I. Lahiri, A. Sarkar, Uniqueness of a meromorphic function and its derivative, JIPAM. J. Inequal. Pure Appl. Math., 5 (2004), no. 1, Article 20, 9 pp. (electronic).
- [14] Zhang, Qing Cai, The uniqueness of meromorphic functions with their derivatives, *Kodai Math. J.*, **21** (1998), no. 2, 179–184.
- [15] Q. C. Zhang, Meromorphic function that shares one small function with its derivative, J. Inequal. Pure. Appl. Math., 6 (2015),1–13.
- [16] K. S. Charak, Banarsi Lal, Uniqueness of f<sup>n</sup> and P[f], arXiv:1501.05092v1.[math.CV]21 Jan 2015.
- [17] A. Banerjee, B. Chakraborty, Further investigations on a question of Zhang and Lü, Ann. Univ. Paedagog. Crac. Stud. Math., 14 (2015), 105– 119.

- [18] A. Banerjee, S. Majumder, Sujoy, On the uniqueness of a power of a meromorphic function sharing a small function with the power of its derivative, *Comment. Math. Univ. Carolin.*, **51** (2010), no. 4, 565–576.
- [19] I. Lahiri, Weighted value sharing and uniqueness of meromorphic functions, Complex Var. Theory and Appl., 46 (2001), no. 3, 241–253.

# Contents Volume 9, 2017

A. K. Asboei, R. Mohammadyari New characterization of symmetric groups of prime degree5
C. Carpintero, J. Pacheco, N. Rajesh, E. Rosas, S. Saranyasri <b>Properties of nearly</b> $\omega$ -continuous multifunctions13
A. C. Cavalheiro Existence and uniqueness of solution for a class of nonlinear degenerate elliptic equation in weighted Sobolev spaces26
Iz. EL-Fassi, A. Chahbi, S. Kabbaj An extension of a variant of d'Alemberts functional equation on compact groups
S. K. Datta, T. Biswas On the growth measures of entire and meromorphic functions focusing their generalized relative type and generalized relative weak type
S. S. Dragomir Trace inequalities of Cassels and Grüss type for operators in Hilbert spaces
M. Eslamian, A. Fakhri Split equality monotone variational inclusions and fixed point problem of set-valued operator94
I. Faisal, M. Darus Study on subclasses of analytic functions

M. Ferdows, S. Khan, M. Alam, A. A. Afify MHD boundary layer flow and heat transfer characteristics of a nanofluid over a stretching sheet
D. E. Hamdaoui, A. A. Bouchentouf, A. Rabhi, T. Guendouzi Asymptotic normality of conditional distribution estimation in the single index model
A. Hosseini Some conditions under which derivations are zero on Banach *-algebras
H. Huang, A. H. Ansari, D. Dolićanin-ekić, S. Radenović Some fixed point results for rational type and subrational type contractive mappings
V. Kakkar, V. K. Jain Solvable and nilpotent right loops
S. Pirzada, U. Samee, T. A. Naikoo Tournaments, oriented graphs and football sequences213
L. Li, P. Zhang Unbounded solutions of an iterative-difference equation224
M. Mattila, J. Merikoski, P. Haukkanen, T. Tossavainen Maximal perpendicularity in certain Abelian groups
F. A. Shah, M. Y. Bhat Polyphase matrix characterization of framelets on local fields of positive characteristic

P. Chettri, A. Chettri
ps-ro fuzzy strongly $\alpha$ -irresolute function
Retraction
M. Crasmareanu Para-mixed linear spaces
O. Engel, A. R. S. Juma The sharp version of a strongly starlikeness condition283
<ul><li>P. A. Kupán, Gy. Márton, R. Szász</li><li>A result regarding monotonicity of the Gamma function291</li></ul>
J. P. Mavoungou Extensional quotient coalgebras
H. R. Moradi, M. E. Omidvar, S. S. Dragomir, M. S. Khan Sesquilinear version of numerical range and numerical radius324
L. Németh Fibonacci words in hyperbolic Pascal triangles
F. Qi, BN. Guo An explicit formula for derivative polynomials of the tangent function
Á. Száz         A natural Galois connection between generalized norms and metrics         360
E. $Sz\acute{ekely}$ Does another Euclidean plane exist other than the parasphere? 374
H. P. Waghamore, V. Husna Uniqueness of polynomial and differential monomial
Contents of volume 9, 2017

# Acta Universitatis Sapientiae

The scientific journal of the Sapientia University publishes original papers and deep surveys in several areas of sciences written in English. Information about the appropriate series can be found at the Internet address http://www.acta.sapientia.ro.

> **Editor-in-Chief** László DÁVID

### Main Editorial Board

Zoltán KÁSA Laura NISTOR András KELEMEN

Ágnes PETHŐ Emőd VERESS

## Acta Universitatis Sapientiae, Mathematica

Executive Editor

Róbert SZÁSZ (Sapientia University, Romania)

**Editorial Board** 

Sébastien FERENCZI (Institut de Mathématiques de Luminy, France) Kálmán GYŐRY (University of Debrecen, Hungary) Zoltán MAKÓ (Sapientia University, Romania) Ladislav MIŠÍK (University of Ostrava, Czech Republic) János TÓTH (Selye University, Slovakia) Adrian PETRUŞEL (Babeş-Bolyai University, Romania)
Alexandru HORVÁTH (Petru Maior University of Tg. Mureş, Romania) Árpád BARICZ (Babeş-Bolyai University, Romania) Csaba SZÁNTÓ (Babeş-Bolyai University, Romania) Szilárd ANDRÁS (Babeş-Bolyai University, Romania)

> Assistant Editor Pál KUPÁN (Sapientia University, Romania)

Contact address and subscription: Acta Universitatis Sapientiae, Mathematica RO 400112 Cluj-Napoca Str. Matei Corvin nr. 4. Email: acta-math@acta.sapientia.ro

Each volume contains two issues.







Scientia Publishing House

ISSN 1844-6094 http://www.acta.sapientia.ro

Sapientia University

## Information for authors

Acta Universitatis Sapientiae, Mathematica publishes original papers and surveys in all field of Mathematics. All papers will be peer reviewed.

Papers published in current and previous volumes can be found in Portable Document Format (pdf) form at the address: http://www.acta.sapientia.ro.

The submitted papers should not be considered for publication by other journals. The corresponding author is responsible for obtaining the permission of coauthors and of the authorities of institutes, if needed, for publication, the Editorial Board disclaims any responsibility.

Submission must be made by email (acta-math@acta.sapientia.ro) only, using the LaTeX style and sample file at the address: http://www.acta.sapientia.ro. Beside the LaTeX source a pdf format of the paper is needed too.

Prepare your paper carefully, including keywords, 2010 Mathematics Subject Classification (MSC 2010) codes (http://www.ams.org/msc//msc2010.html), and the reference citation should be written in brackets in the text as [3]. References should be listed alphabetically using the following examples:

For papers in journals:

A. Hajnal, V. T. Sós, Paul Erdős is seventy, J. Graph Theory, 7 (1983), 391–393. For books:

D. Stanton, D. White, *Constructive combinatorics*, Springer, New York, 1986. For papers in contributed volumes:

Z. Csörnyei, *Compilers* in *Algorithms of informatics, Vol. 1. Foundations* (ed. A. Iványi), mondAt Kiadó, Budapest, 2007, pp. 80–130.

For internet sources:

E. Ferrand, An analogue of the Thue-Morse sequence, *Electron. J. Comb.*, **14** (2007) #R30, http://www.combinatorics.org/.

Illustrations should be given in Encapsulated Postcript (eps) format.

Authors are encouraged to submit papers not exceeding 15 pages, but no more than 10 pages are preferable.

One issue is offered each author. No reprints will be available.

#### Printed by Idea Printing House Director: Péter Nagy